UC Berkeley Dissertations, Department of Linguistics

Title Fundamentals of Iu Mien (Yao) Grammar

Permalink https://escholarship.org/uc/item/4bt0n84j

Author Court, Christopher

Publication Date 1985

Fundamentals of Iu Mien (Yao) Grammar

By

Christopher Anthony Forbes Court A.B. (Hons.) (University of Sydney, Australia) 1961 M.A. (Hons.) (University of Sydney, Australia) 1967 M.A. (University of California) 1981 C.Phil. (University of California) 1981 DISSERTATION

Submitted in partial satisfaction of the requirements for the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

in

Linguistics

in the

GRADUATE DIVISION

OF THE

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY

Approved: 1985

DOCTORAL DECRIF CONFERRED DECEMBER 17, 1985

©1986

•

,

CHRISTOPHER ANTHONY FORBES COURT

All Rights Reserved

AESIRACI

Fundamentals of lu Mien (Yac) Grammar is a basic grammatical study of the language of the Mien (Iu Mien, Yu Mien or Yao) people, as spoken with minor local variations in northern Thailand, northern Laos, north Vietnam and parts of China. The approach is descriptive, but there are frequent references to features general to the linguistic area, and certain features of theoretical relevance are discussed. Data was gathered from 1979 down to the present time from members of the Mien community who had fled Lacs and resettled eventually as refugees in Richmond, California, and published material was also drawn upon. Chapter I provides brief general introduction to the language in its genetic and contact affiliations with other languages and cultures; it also provides a phonological sketch. Chapter II describes the basic units of the language: utterance, sentence, clause, part of speech, and discusses various kinds of sentences and clauses in combination and singly, touching on aspects of verb serialization. Chapter III discusses the noun phrase with special attention to compounds, numerals and classifiers. Chapter IV deals in detail with certain aspects of verbs, verb phrases and clauses, including certain verbal collocations and returning to other aspects of verb serialization. Chapter V presents some brief concluding remarks.

To my beloved wife Sandie

and

my cherished sister-in-law Judy

.

•

ACKNOELEDGEMENIS

My debt of gratitude is cwed to a large number of individuals and organizations, and I hope that I will be forgiven if -- Heaven forbid! -- I should fail to mention any of them.

I am grateful to the Graduate Division of the University of California, Berkeley, for helping to defray the expenses of my research into the Mien language.

To Tom Blair, a former Thai student of mine, and a fellow lover of Thailand, who has always gone out of his way to be forthcoming with bibliographical information, helpful tips, and any other friendly thing he could do.

To Jonathan Habarad, another former Thai student, a fellow student and lover of the Mien people, an expert on the Mien in their resettlement conditions in the United States, who has learned their language and culture even while helping them to cope with problems arising from <u>this</u> country's language and culture, for cultural and bibliographical information about the Mien, especially towards the end of summer 1985, when he was frantically busy himself.

ii

· · · -

To A. Aarons, wizard of UNIX programming, who was always ready to make that devious contrivance do the things we wanted it to, even when it didn't want to.

To Dorothy Duff Brown, a bottomless source of wisdom and helpfulness in matters of dissertation writing.

To Dr. Kun Chang, pioneer and savant of Miac-Yao studies, for prompt and sympathetic help.

To my office-mate, Usha Jain, who graciously yielded her part of the office for the final months of dissertation-writing in summer 1985.

To Alan Shaterian, an old friend of my wife's, with whom I share an interest in ear-phonetics and the stranger sounds that people make, for helpful advice in practical matters at various stages of the research, and the gift of a copy of his own dissertation in order to encourage me.

To Julian Wheatley and David Solnit, who, while they were at the University of California, Berkeley, as fellow members of the small circle of people interested in Southeast Asian linguistics, joined me in stimulating and helpful discussions.

To Yvonne Kins, Administrative Assistant, and Helen Tu, Graduate Secretary of the Department of South and Southeast

iii

Asian Studies, the University of California, Berkeley, who have always helped me as I became a teacher, while still a graduate student.

To Bob Goldman, Amin Sweeney, Sally Sutherland and all the other faculty of the Department of South and Southeast Asian Studies, the University of California, Berkeley, who make the Department such a delightful and stimulating place to work.

To the twin pillars of the Linguistic Department at the University of California, Berkeley, Mrs. Eileen Odegaard and Mrs. Larue Seegmiller, for never-failing help and advice through my years as a graduate student.

To Chaosarn Srisongfa, an important leader of the Mien refugee community, who invited me as a linguist from the University of California, Berkeley, to make a practical investigation of his language, thus leading me back to Mien studies.

To my Mien friends and informants, Fcu-One Saephan and Moung-Yoon Chow, who were so patient, insightful and sympathetic in helping me to study their language.

To my Dissertation Committee members, Karl Zimmer of the Department of Linguistics, an expert on compounding, and Herb Phillips, of the Department of Anthropology, another lover of Thailand, and champicn of Thai studies at the University of California, Berkeley, for their sympathy and encouragement.

v

To Jim Matisoff, Chair of my Dissertation Committee and connoisseur extraordinaire of Southeast Asian languages, who first made it possible for me to come to the University of California, Berkeley, for graduate studies and has been throughout an essential source of encouragement and help of all kinds.

To my beloved and heroic sister-in-law, Judy Betts, for many, many days and nights of professional assistance, as word processor and editor, who saw that the dissertation made its deadline, and is responsible for its elegant and professional format.

Lastly, to Sandra Shamis, my wife and companion of my graduate school years, herself a veteran of graduate studies and the academic milieu, who copec with the problems of both running a household and her own career, while extending her loving help in ways too numercus to mention.

TABLE DE CONTENTS

.

| CHAPTER I | INTRODUCTION | |
|------------|--|----|
| 1.1 | Iu-Mien as Miao-Yu language | 1 |
| 1.2 | The setting of the Mien lan- guage: Yao (or Mien) culture and history | 7 |
| 1.2.1 | Circumstances of the study | 8 |
| 1 • 2 • 2 | The informants | 9 |
| 1.3 | Phonology | 10 |
| (a) | Vowel-harmony | 11 |
| (b) | Initial consonant voicing- harmony | 11 |
| 1.3.1 | The segmental material | 12 |
| 1.3.1.1 | Historical origin of the segmental material | 17 |
| 1.3.2 | The tones of Mien | 17 |
| 1.3.2.1 | Tone correspondence with Chinese | 18 |
| 1.3.2.2 | Tone-sandhi | 19 |
| 1.3.3 | Intonation | 19 |
| 1.3.4 | Junctures or pauses | 20 |
| 1.3.5 | Orthography | 20 |
| CHAPTER II | THE TYPFS OF SIMPLE SENTENCE; THE SENTENCE TOPIC; THE CLAUSE; SENTENCES SIMPLE AND COMPOSITE; PARTS OF SPEECH | 23 |
| 2.1 | Introduction | 23 |

.

| 2.2 | The utterance | 23 |
|-----------|---|----|
| 2.3 | The sentence | 24 |
| 2.3.1 | What is bounded by the process may be a simple or composite utterance | 24 |
| 2 • 3 • 2 | Prosodic elements may distin- guish different constituent groupings within the sentence | 24 |
| 2.3.3 | Utterances and sentences as speech acts | 25 |
| (a) | Statements of states of affairs | 25 |
| (b) | Promptings to the interlocutor | 25 |
| (c) | Questions | 26 |
| (d) | Addressative expressions | 26 |
| (e) | Responses to utterance types | 26 |
| (f) | Exclamations | 26 |
| 2.3.3.1 | Final remarks on sentences as speech acts | 27 |
| 2.3.4 | Structure of the sentence | 27 |
| 2.3.4.1 | The topic as a sentence con- stituent: the "Natural Topic Hierarchy" | 29 |
| 2.3.4.1.1 | Nominal expression as topic | 31 |
| 2.3.4.1.2 | The verb phrase as topic | 31 |
| 2.3.4.1.3 | Time expression as topic | 32 |
| 2.3.4.1.4 | Place expression as topic | 32 |
| 2.3.4.1.5 | Topics that can be interpreted as agents introduced by a pre- position | 33 |
| 2.3.4.1.6 | Clauses as topics | 33 |

•

| 2.3.4.1.6.1 | Survey of account of topic so far | 34 |
|---------------|---|----|
| 2.3.4.1.7 | Sentences with resultative com- plements: are they of topic- comment structure? | 36 |
| 2.3.4.2 | The semantics of the topic- comment construction | 39 |
| 2.3.4.2.1 | Sentences where verbs have to be mentally supplied | 40 |
| 2.3.4.2.2 | The topic comment copula: <se> or <sue></sue></se> | 41 |
| 2.3.4.2.3 | Sentences where conjunctions have to be mentally supplied: parataxis | 45 |
| 2.3.4.2.4 | Concluding remarks on topic- comment semantics | 49 |
| 2.3.4.3 | Sentences simple and composite | 49 |
| 2.3.4.3.1 | Which strings of verbs or verb- phrases constitute clauses? | 50 |
| 2.3.4.3.2 | Composite sentences or separate sentences? | 50 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.1 | Prosodic elements | 51 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2 | Topicalizers and conjunctions single repeated and correlative | 52 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.1 | Topicalizers and single con- junctions | 52 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.2 | Repeated conjunctions or adverbial phrases | 55 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.3 | Correlative conjunctions and adverbs | 56 |
| 2.3.4.3.2.2.4 | Parallelism of the clauses | 58 |
| 2.3.4.4 | Is the composite sentence com- pound or complex? If complex, what are the exact relations among the parts? | 60 |

Table of Contents

| 2.3.4.4.1 | Paratactic sentences: deep structure | 60 |
|------------------|---|------------|
| 2.3.4.4.1.1 | Irreversibility of the order of the clauses | 62 |
| 2.3.4.4.2 | Sentences with repeated con- junctions or adverbial phrases | 63 |
| 2.3.4.4.3 | Alternative questions | 63 |
| 2.3.4.4.4 | Sentences with clausal subjects/ topics | 63 |
| 2.3.4.4.5 | Sentences with amplificatory clauses | 64 |
| 2.3.4.4.5.1 | Sentences with clausal comple- ments after verbs of emotion | 65 |
| 2.3.4.4.5.2 | Sentences containing the word <pre><pre><pre>pingx> 'to hide; to act surrep- titiously' combined into the structure "<pingx> + VP", mean- ing 'to VP surreptitiously'</pingx></pre></pre></pre> | 6 6 |
| 2.3.4.4.5.3 | Sentences containing the struc- ture "VP + <aao-dzyaauc>" 'to play', with the meaning 'to VP without serious intent'</aao-dzyaauc> | 67 |
| 2.3.4.4.6 | Sentences with purpose clauses | 67 |
| 2.3.4.4.6.1 | Purpose clauses after the verbs of motion <taaih> 'to come' and <mingh> 'to go'</mingh></taaih> | 69 |
| 2.3.4.4.6.2 | Sentences with clauses of reason | 70 |
| 2 • 3• 4 • 4 • 7 | Sentences with quoted clauses as clausal objects | 70 |
| 2.3.4.4.8 | Post-pivotal clauses as objects: the pivotal construction | 71 |
| 2.3.4.4.9 | Sentences containing a relative clause (RC) | 72 |
| 2.3.4.4.9.1 | Structural varieties of relative clause | 72 |

ir

.

| 2.3.4.4.9.2 | Dne kind of reduced relative clause: pseudo-pivotal construc- tion | 74 |
|-----------------------|--|----|
| 2.3.4.4.9.3 | Another kind of reduced relative clause: the RC incorporated into the nominal compound | 75 |
| 2 • 3 • 4 • 4 • 9 • 4 | Various syntactic roles of the NP?s that can head RC?s: the "Accessibility Hierarchy" | 75 |
| 2.3.5 | Structure of questions | 82 |
| 2.3.5.1 | "Yes/no" questions | 82 |
| 2.3.5.2 | Alternative questions | 85 |
| 2.3.5.3 | "Wh"-questions: the correlation between "wh"-question words, in- definite pronouns and indefinite relative pronouns | 86 |
| 2.4 | The word: parts of speech | 90 |
| (1) | Numerals (Num) | 90 |
| (2) | Classifiers (Clf) | 90 |
| (3) | Nouns (N) | 90 |
| (4) | Verbs (V) | 91 |
| (5) | Adverbs (Adv) | 91 |
| (6) | Conjunctions (Conj) | 91 |
| (7) | Particles (Prt) | 91 |
| (8) | Interjections (Intj) | 91 |
| 2.4.1 | Morphology of the parts of speech | 92 |
| 2.4.1.1 | Apparent fossil remains of deri- vational morphology: allofams | 92 |
| 2.4.1.1.1 | Mien doublets from one and the same Chinese word | 93 |
| 2.4.1.1.2 | Non-doubletic allofams | 96 |

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

x

Table of Contents

| 2•4•2 | Overlapping parts of speech | 99 |
|---|--|--|
| (a) | Verb/noun | 99 |
| (b) | Verb/numeral | 101 |
| 2.4.2.1 | Overlapping parts of speech among Chinese loanwords | 101 |
| 2.4.3 | Hononomy | 102 |
| CHAPTER III | THE NOUN PHRASE | 104 |
| 3.1 | The general structure of the Noun Phrase (NP) | 104 |
| 3.2 | Autonomous ncuns (N) a | 105 |
| 3.2.1 | Common nouns | 107 |
| 3.2.2 | Proper nouns | 107 |
| 3.2.3 | Interrogative/Indefinite pronouns | 109 |
| | | |
| 3 •2 • 4 | The demonstratives <naiv> `this', <naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon'</uav></naic></naiv> | 110 |
| 3 •2 • 4 3 •2 • 5 | <pre><naic> `that (near addressee)'</naic></pre> | 110 112 |
| | <naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon'</uav></naic> | |
| 3.2.5 | <naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon' Spatial co-deictics</uav></naic> | 112 |
| 3 • 2 • 5 3 • 2 • 6 | <pre><naic> `that (near addressee)' <ur><uav> `yon'Spatial co-deicticsThe personal pronouns</uav></ur></naic></pre> | 112 113 |
| 3.2.5 3.2.6 3.3 | <pre><naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon' Spatial co-deictics The personal pronouns Compound nouns Compound orders and hypheniza-</uav></naic></pre> | 112 113 3.3 |
| 3.2.5 3.2.6 3.3 3.3.1 | <pre><naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon' Spatial co-deictics The personal pronouns Compound nouns Compound orders and hypheniza- tion</uav></naic></pre> | 112 113 3.3 115 |
| 3.2.5 3.2.6 3.3 3.3.1 3.3.1 | <pre><naic> `that (near addressee)' <uav> `yon' Spatial co-deictics The personal pronouns Compound nouns Compound orders and hypheniza- tion Noun-noun compounds (N-N cpds)</uav></naic></pre> | 112 113 3.3 115 117 |
| 3.2.5 3.2.6 3.3 3.3.1 3.3.2 3.3.2 | <pre><naic> 'that (near addressee)' <uav> 'yon' Spatial co-deictics The personal pronouns Compound nouns Compound orders and hypheniza- tion Noun-noun compounds (N-N cpds) Co-ordinate N-N cpds Appositional N-N cps</uav></naic></pre> | 112 113 3.3 115 117 117 |
| 3.2.5 3.2.6 3.3 3.3.1 3.3.2 3.3.2.1 3.3.2.1 3.3.2.1.1 3.3.2.1.2 | <pre><naic> 'that (near addressee)' <uav> 'yon' Spatial co-deictics The personal pronouns Compound nouns Compound orders and hypheniza- tion Noun-noun compounds (N-N cpds) Co-ordinate N-N cpds Appositional N-N cps</uav></naic></pre> | 112 113 3.3 115 117 117 |

. · ·

| 3.3.2.2.2 | N -compounds | 124 |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 3.3.3 | sp Verb-containing nominal com- pounds | 126 |
| 3.3.3.1 | Nominal compounds containing V | 126 |
| 3.3.3.1.1 | adj v + N cpds | 127 |
| 3.3.3.1.2 | adj h The "aft-" adjective | 129 |
| 3.3.3.2 | Nominal compounds containing action-verbs | 129 |
| 3.3.3.2.1 | y + N compounds | 130 |
| 3-3-3-2-2 | h N + V compounds | 131 |
| 3.3.4 | h Compounds of more than two morphemes | 132 |
| 3.3.4.1 | Nominal compounds containing a reduced relative clause | 132 |
| 3.3.5 | Other aspects of nominal compounds | 134 |
| 3.3.5.1 | Corpounds with bound con- stituents | 134 |
| 3.3.5.2 | Types of bound constituent | 134 |
| (a) | Prefixes | 134 |
| (b) | Suffixes | 136 |
| (c) | Korphans | 136 |
| (d) | Lean morphemes | 137 |
| 3.3.5.3 | Reduplication in nominal compounds | 137 |
| 3.3.6 | Final remarks on order of modified | 138 |
| 3.4 | Special types of NP (I) quan- tified NP | 141 |

| 3.4.1 | The numerals (Num) | 141 |
|---------------|--|-----|
| 3.4.1.1 | Classification of numeral morphemes by co-occurrence | 143 |
| 3.4.1.2 | Provenience of the Num morphemes | 145 |
| 3.4.1.3 | Ordinary and special numeration | 145 |
| 3.4.1.3.1 | Ordinary numeration | 146 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1 | Cardinal numerals | 146 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.1 | Morphophonemics of the numerals | 146 |
| (A) | Segmental morphophonemics | 146 |
| (a) | Obligatory | 146 |
| (b) | Optional | 147 |
| (B) | Tonal morphophonemics | 147 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 | The grammatical structure of .numbers | 149 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.3 | Co-occurrence among Num morphemes of Sets I, II | 151 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.4 | Short form of numerals | 151 |
| (a) | Some generativistic remarks on shortened numerals | 152 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.5 | Other features of Num's | 153 |
| (A) | Num's with gaps | 153 |
| (B) | Num's with <tshaux> `and'</tshaux> | 153 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.1.6 | Cautionary remark about high numbers | 154 |
| 3.4.1.3.1.2 | Drdinal numerals | 155 |
| 3.4.1.3.2 | Special numeration | 156 |
| 3.4.1.3.2.1 | Usage with certain classifiers | 156 |
| 3.4.1.3.2.2 | Days of the week | 157 |

Table of Contents

| 3.4.1.3.2.3 | Days of the lunar month | 158 |
|---------------|---|-----|
| 3.4.1.3.2.4 | The twelve lunar month names | 159 |
| 3.4.1.3.2.5 | Naming of offspring by birth order | 160 |
| 3.4.1.3.2.6 | Numbers in lexicalized combi- nations | 163 |
| 3.4.2 | Classifiers | 165 |
| 3.4.2.1 | Kinds of Clf's | 170 |
| 3.4.2.1.1 | Auto-Clf's | 170 |
| 3.4.2.1.1.1 | Noun-autoclassifiers | 170 |
| 3.4.2.1.1.1.1 | Familial noun-autoclassifiers of concerted involvement | 171 |
| 3.4.2.1.1.2 | Verb-autoclassifiers: homo- phonous cognate objects | 172 |
| 3.4.2.1.2 | Verb-Classifiers (V-Clf's) | 172 |
| 3.4.2.1.2.1 | A selection of Verb-Clf's | 173 |
| 3.4.2.1.3 | Specific Clf's | 174 |
| 3.4.2.1.3.1 | A selection of specific classi- fiers | 177 |
| 3.4.2.1.4 | The broad-purpose specific Clf <nawm></nawm> | 179 |
| 3.4.2.1.5 | Measure Clf's | 181 |
| 3.4.2.1.5.1 | A selection of measure classi- fiers | 182 |
| 3.4.2.1.6 | Group Clf's | 185 |
| 3.4.2.1.6.1 | Selection of Group Classifiers | 186 |
| 3.4.2.1.? | Round-number Clf's (Clf 's) | 187 |
| 3.4.2.1.8 | Quasi-Clf's | 188 |
| 3.4.2.2 | Reduplication of Clf's | 189 |

•

| 3.4.3 | A note on singular/plural as a grammatical category in Mien | 190 |
|------------|---|-----|
| 3.4.4 | Polyquantification | 190 |
| 3.4.4.1 | Fractions | 191 |
| 3.4.4.2 | Independent multiple quantifi- cation | 192 |
| 3.5 | Special types of NP (II): demon- stratival NP | 192 |
| 3.5.1 | Quantified NP's with demon- stratives | 192 |
| 3.6 | Special types of nominal nucleus (III): locational NP's | 192 |
| 3.7 | Subordinative constructions with <nyei></nyei> | 193 |
| 3.8 | NP's with N deleted | 194 |
| 3.9 | Multiple structural ambiguity partially resolved by tone sandhi | 195 |
| 3.10 | NP's accompanied by particles | 201 |
| 3.11 | The structure of the NP in tech- nical detail (phrase-structure (PS) rules) | 201 |
| CHAPTER IV | ASPECTS OF THE NOUN PHRASE AND CLAUSE | 215 |
| 4.1 | The structure of the VP | 215 |
| 4.2 | Criteria for verbhood and some- associated problems | 215 |
| (a) | Failure to appear in the positive | 216 |
| (b) | Failure to appear in the negative | 218 |
| (c) | Syntactic behavior in the negative not parallel to the positive: the case of <mv pei=""></mv> | 219 |

Table of Contents

.

| 4.3 | Morphological aspects of the verb | 221 |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 4.4 | Overlapping subcategories of verbs | 221 |
| 4.5 | Verb-heads classified by morpho- logical structure | 223 |
| 4.5.1 | Canonical form of verbs: monomor- phemic monosyllables | 223 |
| 4 • 5 • 2 | Some verbs of dubious morphemic structure: polysyllabic verb mor- phemes or compound verbs | 223 |
| 4.5.3 | Polysyllabic verbs | 224 |
| 4 • 5 • 4 | Verbs containing an identifiable morpheme together with a morphan | 224 |
| 4.5.5 | Verb compounds | 226 |
| 4.5.5.1 | Co-ordinate compounds | 227 |
| 4.5.5.2 | Subordinative compounds | 228 |
| 4.5.5.3 | Psycho-colloctions: are they com- pounds or syntactic constructions? | 230 |
| (1) | Selectional restrictions | 233 |
| (2) | Semantic unpredictability | 233 |
| 4.5.5.3.1 | Psycho-collocations, "heart"- extraction, and cross-language typology of sentence-construc- tion | 234 |
| 4 •5 •6 | Reduplication in verbal struc- tures | 237 |
| 4.5.6.1 | Reduplication without tone- sandhi | 237 |
| 4.5.6.1.1 | Reduplication of the verb with- out tone-sandhi, followed by the particle <uav></uav> | 238 |

;•

•

| 4.5.6.1.2 | Reduplication of the verb with- out tone-sandhi, the elements separated by the intensifier/ extensifier morpheme <taax></taax> | 239 |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 4.5.6.1.3 | Some generalizations on re- duplication so far | 239 |
| 4.5.6.1.4 | Reduplication on adverbial phrases | 240 |
| 4.5.6.2 | Reduplication with tone-sandhi | 240 |
| 4.5.6.2.1 | Reduplication in adverbial phrases | 240 |
| 4.5.6.2.2 | Reduplication of compounds | 242 |
| 4.6 | Secondary features of verbs: subcategorization | 242 |
| (1) | Combinability with <taic> as intensifier</taic> | 242 |
| (2) | Combinability with <tsienz> as superlativizer</tsienz> | 242 |
| (3) | Combinability with <tingc> as superlativizer</tingc> | 243 |
| (4) | Combinability with <jhienv> as a progressive aspect marker</jhienv> | 243 |
| 4.6.1 | Auxiliaries (V) aux | 244 |
| 4.7 | Basic word order in the clause | 246 |
| 4.7.1 | Constructions of giving | 246 |
| 4 •8 | Verb- (or VP-) serialization | 247 |
| 4.8.1 | Second verbs as directional com- lements | 247 |
| 4 •8•2 | The verbs (mingh) and (taaih) used as aspectual/evaluative/diectics complements | 248 |
| 4.8.3 | The co-verbial construction | 248 |

| 4.8.4 | The V + <pun> + NP construction</pun> | 249 |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 4.9 | Other constituents of the clause: adverbial expressions of time; manner and place | 249 |
| 4.9.1 | Time | 250 |
| 4.9.2 | Manner | 250 |
| 4.9.3 | Place | 251 |
| CHAPTER V | CONCLUDING REMARKS | 253 |

.

;

Table of Contents

·

| 1(1) | Mien initials and combinations of initials with medials -y-, -w- (Section 1.2.1) | 14 |
|--------|--|-----|
| 1(11) | Mien rimes in syllables without medials (Section 1.2.1) | 15 |
| 1(111) | Pien rimes in syllables with -y- medial (Section 1.2.1) | 16 |
| 1(1V) | Mien rimes in syllables with -w- medial (Section 1.2.1) | 17 |
| 2(1) | The upper-level constituent- structure of a sentence, showing multiple layers (Sec. 2.3.4.2.2) | 36 |
| 2(11) | The constituent structure of the sentence (yietc nawm teic- pung, sue maaih naangc ngaate, maaih uav nawm teic-pung nyei dia-ei> (Section 2.3.4.2.2) | 44 |
| 3(1) | The constituent structure of the complex numeral <i-laam ifwaanc iftshin nyeicf tsiepc=nyeic> (Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2)</i-laam | 150 |
| 3(11) | Structure of Kyia bua pua tauh (mienh) mingh> (Section 3.4.2) | 167 |
| 3(111) | Syntactic structure of <yia- bua mingh pua-tauh mienh> (Section 3.4.2)</yia- | 168 |
| 3(1V) | Syntactic structure of <ninh diqv jhawn yietc digv/dzunc/ Dungc/nyung2 (Section 3.4.2)</ninh | 169 |
| 3(V) | The structure of a compound noun <touc-tauh> (Section 3.9)</touc-tauh> | 198 |
| 3(VI) | The structure of the headless NP <touc tauh=""> (Section 3.9)</touc> | 199 |

.

.

| 3(V11) | The structure of the VP (touc tauh) (Section 3.9) | 200 |
|---------|--|------|
| 3(VIII) | Phrase structure of <ninh-bua I tauh mienh> (Section 3.11)</ninh-bua | 21,0 |
| 3(1X) | Phrase structure of <chlaang uav teix i tauh mienh> (Sec~ tion 3.11)</chlaang | 211 |
| 3(X) | Phrase structure of Chaiv teix i nawm tshia pua nawm phing uav nyungc> (Section 3.11) | 212 |
| 3(XI) | Phrase structure of <pua nawm<br="">phing uav nyungc i nawm tshia> (Section 3.11)</pua> | 213 |
| 3(XII) | Phrase structure of <naiv haivfnyungx?> (Section 3.11)</naiv | 214 |

.

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

1.1. <u>Iu-Mien as a MimorYao_language</u>. Mien, Iu Mien, or Yu Mienh, is a member of the Miac-Yao (MY) tribal languages spoken in Southern China in the mountaincus regions of the provinces of Hunan, Guizłew, Sichuan, Yunnan, Gwangxi and Guangdong, and even of the island province of Hainan, of which the Miao side is represented in mainland southeast Asia (North Vietnam, Lacs, and northern Thailand), by two varieties of Miao ("White" Miac and "Green" -- or "Blue" -- Miao, so-called from certair aspects of their dress). Designated by the Thai and Lac variants of the Chinese name <u>miao</u>, viz. <u>méw</u> in Thai, ard its corresponding form in Lao, the Miao of Thailand and Lacs prefer to be referred to by the name "Hmong".

As for the Yao branch of the family, Yao (yao) is their Chinese ethnonym, although it is not strictly linguistic, and is applied to certain languages either not of the Yao branch of the Miao-Yao family, or not Miac-Yac at all. Yac, properly so-celled from the linguistic point of view is represented in Southeast Asia by two dialect, Iu Mienh, and Kim-Mun (Purnell 1968:137), both with some local variations. Iu Mien is the most important branch of the family in Southeast Asia in numbers and influence, and this also seems to be true in China, where most of the Yao are to be found. It is the typical (linguistically) Vac dialect that is described in the Chinese linguistic works (e.g., Mao and Chou (1972) and for which reman crthegraphies have been developed both in China, under the guidance of linguists, and in Thailand by missionaries). The tien in Thailand and Laos prefer to be referred to by their autc-ethnonym "lu-Mien", or "Mien" for short, and dc not like to be referred to as "Yao", as the Thai and Lao do (Thai yaw, and its Lac congener). In the name "Iu Mien" (iu0-mient)[1] the (mient) part means 'Mien person' (also 'person; mankind' in general, if there is no contrast with other races in mind), while the <iuD-> part may represent a name of Chinese origin, presumably in its Cantonese vocalism, cr.it may on the other hand represent an indigenous self-designation:[2] Lifferent family trees for the Yao language family are given by Purnell (1970:137) and Mao, Meng and Zheng (1982, cited in Solait (1984 (2)).

Hiao-Yao, in spite of Chinese looseness in their use of the words "Miao" and "Yao", is a well-defined language grouping, and comparative work has been cone by Chang (1947, 1953, 1966, 1972, 1976 and n.d.), Haucriccurt (1954), Pur-

^[1] For orthogramy used in this bock see Section 1.3.5 below. [2] See Cushman 1970:49-55.

nell (1970), Hao, Heng and Zheng (1982), Chen (1982), Downer (1973) and Solnit (1974). Its broader affiliations are not certain. In the past it was grouped with Chinese, libetc-Burgan and Thai as "Indochinese" (in an obsciete, broad sense of that term that included languages of India, Southeast Asia and China), or "Sinc-Tibetan" (in an equally old-fashicned meaning of that term). The latter practice is still maintained in mainland China, where the Ican translation <u>Han Jang</u> ("Chinese-Tibetan") is usec. Connections have alsc been proposed (e.g., Forrest 1965) with Austroasiatic; Benedict sets Hiac-Yac alongside his grouping that he calls "Kadai" (including Tai, Kam-Sui and cthers) and Austronesian, into an overall grouping which he refers to as "Austro-Tai". At present the field of professional opinion seems balanced between Benedict's view: (although more attention has been paid to the Tai-Austronesian connection than to the position of Miao-Yao) and an inclination to suspend judgment until more descriptive and historical work has been done, especially at the lower-order genetic groupings. Luckily such lower-order work is in progress: for instance, Mao, Meng and Zheng (1982), Chen (1982), and Scinit (1984). As for the difference between Miac and Yac_{0} (hang (n.d.:2) proposes to make it in terms of diachronic phonology:

"Yao dialects are those which preserve the set of final consonants [-p, -t, -k, -m, -m, -m] either completely or almost completely; Fiao dialects з.

have either none of these final consonants or at most -<u>n</u> and -<u>n</u>]. This classification coincides generally with the ethnic classification indicated by the two Chinese designations".

Such a distinction is too one-dimensional to cover all the facts, of course, and Solnit (1984) suggests substituting for Chang's criterion that of the loss of all proto-Miao-Yao final contrasts except the opposition of nasalized versus non-nasalized rhymes.

Now when it comes to relating Mizo-Yao to <u>Chinese</u>, there are at the heart of the problem two factors: (1) a sizeable group of <u>lexical items</u> in Miao-Yao that relate, with varying degrees of certainty, to Chinese; and (2) the <u>tonal system</u> of Miao-Yao, which equates quite regularly with that cf Chinese in the words of the aforesaid group. These two factors must be explained in terms cf genetic inheritance and/or borrowing. However, it must be noted that although there are numerous Mizo-Yao-to-Chinese cognates that are attested in both branches cf Miao-Yao and are reconstructible for proto-Niac-Yao, a majority of words with Chinese affiliations are confined to Yac (more specifically, to lu-Mien), with Miao showing largely recent Chinese loans (Downer 1973).

Downer (op. cit.) has distinguished three strata of Chinese loanwords in Mien: (1) Southwestern Mandarin

(modern, borrowing still in process), (2) Cantonese (date indeterminate), and (3) an older stratum, labeled, with some reservations, "Middle Chinese" (attested by the Qieyum, 7th-8th centuries, but some of the phonological characteristics undeubtedly going back to the 4th or 5th centuries). These three strata are distinct from the words at the proto-Miao-Yao level first mentioned.

We may thus, as Solnit (n.d.) says, posit an initial period of either Miac-Yao-to-Chinese contact or proto-Miac-Yao-with-Chinese unity (which latter raises the problem of what to do with Tibeto-Burman in this reconstruction) in order to account for the proto-Mizo-Yao stratum. This unity would have to be at such a great time depth, and be overlaid by sc much areal influence as to render the genetic versus contact distinction largely meaningless, at least as regards the comparison of syntax, and of morphology (such as it was: see Section 2.4.1.1 et seq. belcw].[3] Following this would a prolonged period of Mien-Chinese (cr perhaps common be Yac-Chinese) contact that is indicated by the Middle Chinese and Cantonese strata. This procuded a considerable influence on the lexicon, as on the cultural slife reflected in this lexicon.

[3] Aspects of the early Sino-Tibetan/Hiac-Yac relationships recently reviewed by Benedict (1985), and before that in Ballard (1981),

It is no doubt continuous migration associated with a continuous struggle for survival which has served to diffuse the Miao-Yao peoples over such a wide area and brought them in and out of contact with different Chinese speechcommunities. Large Miao-Yao communities have been broken into small groups: in a single district, in normal times, in their normal Asian habitat, several different groups of Miac-Yao-speaking people, of different origins and speaking different dialects, may live next to one another, next to non-Kiao-Yao peoples and next to speakers of various dialects of Chinese.

This normal situation of hcdgepodge juxtapcsition has been intensified by the latest chapter of their odyssey of survival, occasioned by the Indo-Chinese war, since members of different groups now find themselves in adjoining cubicles in refugee camps in Thailand, and in adjoining apartoments, tenements or houses in the poorer parts of Richmond, Dakland, and others parts of California, in the United States of America, and in similar situations in France and Canada. And for these trans-oceanic contingents of Miao-Yao at least, we may well predict that a multi-millennial epic of language maintenance will at last core to a close. Eut such a shift of language (and culture) is perhaps nothing

[3] See, for instance, Habarad (n.c. (a) and (b)).

new for segments of the Miao and the Yac populations, for if Ballard (1981) is correct. the Wu and Min dialects of Chinese are nothing but Chinese learned and handed down by populations originally Miao and Yac respectively. And certainly every effort is currently being mace in Thailand and Laos to integrate these people irte the mainstream cultures of those countries. This may well be true of Vietnam as well, in view of the Vietnamese government's policies of "domestication" and demographic inundation towards the gene Vietnam (these policies merely cf central tagnards representing the continuation of those of the ancien regime towards the same people).[4]

1.2. <u>Ihe_setting_of_the_Bien_larguage:_Yao_for_Mienl</u> <u>culture_and_bistory.</u> Overall the best and most complete ethnography of the Yao is Wist (1938). Aspects of their culture as they cope with contemporary conditions are dealt with in Miles (1972 a, 197b, 1973), Kandre (1967), Kandre and Lej Tsankouei (1965, 1967 and 1976). In their worldview they are a blend of animist, Confucianist and Taoist (Kancre and Lej Tsankouei 1965; Lemoine 1982a). There is a fine study of their Taoist paintings and associated beliefs in Lemoine (1982b). A very detailed ethnohistory is Cushman (n.c.), that gives some idea of their generally unfortunate

[4] Marr 1985:6.

relations with the Chinese over the centuries. At the present time the Mien, like other ethnic groups of Indochina, are more accessible to stucy in their adoptive new countries than in Indochina, e.g., there have been at least two studies of the Iu Mien now residing in Gakland, California made by students at the University of California, Berkeley, and studies made by University of California, Berkeley linguistic students of the language of Mien now residing in Richmond, California, and include Court (n.c.), Solnit (n.d.), and the present study.

Mien is an unwritten language, although various attempts are being made to establish romanized ways of writing it. The Chinese script is used for certain ritual purposes, and as well the clan names are Chinese characters. The Mien have two special song languages: one is used for ritual purposes and is pretty much a form of classical Chinese. It functions as a source of high-style expression in the spoken language, much like wervan in Chinese. The other song language seems to be simply the Southwest Manda-(see below) rin lingua franca. This is not to say, of course, that the Mien do not sing as well in the ordinary Mien language.

1.2.1 <u>Circumstances of the study</u>. Lata was gathered from both informants and the published sources. The language recorded by Purnell and Lombarc was obviously vir-

tually identical with that of the informants so that the two sources could be conflated into a single coherent description. Data was gathered in two periods of activity: September 1979-May 1980, and sporadically from August 1983 down to the present (August 1985) and continuing. All data from informants was collected either on the campus of the University of California, Berkeley or at my home nearby.

1.2.2 <u>The informants</u>. There were three principal informants:

(1) F.L.; male: assisted September 1979-Pay 1980. kas fifteen years old at the time.

(2) F.D.; male: assisted sporadically from August 1983 down to the present time. Was 36 years old when he began to work with me.

(3).M.Y.; female: assisted for the same period as F.O. and was 22 when she first began to work with me.

All the informants were extremely intelligent and articulate. All hailed from the same Nam Tha area of Laos, in the so-called "Golden Triangle", and had been through the experience of relocating so that they lived side by side with ethnic Lacs, first in Laos and then for five years in refugee camps in Thailand. They had thus had heavy exposure to Lao and Thai and were industricusly learning English when

I was working with them. In addition, F.G. had spent some time at a Chinese school and had a certain knowledge of a Yunnanese form of Southwest Mandarin spoken Chinese. Indeed the latter language is something of a <u>bingua franca</u> in the hills of the Golden Triangle. Thus the possibility of interference from other languages in the cata that 1 collected cannot be discounted, but I hope that my constant reference to the works of Lombard and Furnell counteracted this, and in any case Mien, even in its cwn habitat, is under heavy influence from the various national languages and <u>lingua francas</u>.

Access to the informants has been limited by various constraints -- notably financial -- and the fact that the more intelligent, articulate Mien in the Bay Area are more than fully occupied with surviving and helping their brethren to survive in the new environment. Under the circumstances we have been able to treat some subjects more fully than others, but we trust that the work will prove to be a useful expansion and elaboration of the first notes on aspects of Mien grammar to be found in the works of Purneil, Lombard and Meng and Chou.

1.3. <u>Phonology</u>. The descriptive phonology of Mien has been presented in Downer 1961, 1973:(segments and tones), and Purnell 1965 (segments, tones, intoration, stress, junc-

ture), and more briefly in Purnell 1970, while a virtually identical dialect has been described in Pao and Chou 1972. Therefore we will provide only a sketch here. A salient feature of the dialect is the reduction of non-fully stressed syllables (see Downer 1961:Sec. 3 et seq. and Purnell 1965:Sec. 112 et seq.). The first cegree of reduction affects only the tones: all contrasts are lost uncer tonesandhi (in certain syntactic and lexical combinations; see Beyond the first degree of reduction more drastic belcwl. changes take place and Purnell (cp. cit.) distinguishes two degrees of reduced syllables here: "contracted minor syllables", and "neutral syllables". Neither Downer nor Purnell mention it specifically, but at the most reduced stage vowel-harmony and voicing-harmony of the initial consonant can take place: e.g.,

- (a) <u>Ycwel=barmony:</u> <gaiv>:[5] [] gay] 'excrement' becomes
 [4 gu] in <guD-khuatv> [4 gu] khuat] 'anus'
 [*excrement-hole"];

[5] Angle brackets enclose the orthography used in the present work; see below.

Weak-stressed syllables can be regarded as derived from fully-stressed syllables by stress-reduction rules of the Chomsky-Halle type (except that a fully-specified underlying form is not always synchronically recoverable). For that reason we shall from here on, unless otherwise stated. be describing fully-stressed syllables. These can be most immediately analyzed into segmental material and tones.

1.3.1 The segmental material, Within the syllable it is easy to isolate the final consonants, but when it cores to the rest of the segmental material, if it is phonetically complex it is difficult to analyze its constituent structure in a non-arbitrary manner. For instance, if we take a syllable like [pyop], do we divide it into an initial cluster [py] and a remainder, or into an initial [p] plus a "medial" [y] plus a rime Lop]? Or do we divice it into an initial Lolplus a rising diphthong nucleus Liol and a final Lp]? With a syllable like, say, [hiat], do we interpret this as [h] + [iə] ... cr as [hy] + [ə] ...? [ifferent approaches have been adopted by different people cescribing Mien. In the present work I shall use the intermediate missionary orthography -- a new one has just been adopted -- and present an analysis of the syllable that is fairly close to theirs, since that makes easier the trarsition from phonetic spelling to the orthography. First, the initials of Mien, according to this analysis, can be seen in Figure 1(1).

Aspirated stops and aspirated schorants count as single phonemes. Medial [-y-] and [-w-] are treated as "medials" in the sinclogical sense, and the combinations of initials with medials are also shown in Figure 1(1). The vocalic nuclei of Mien are displayed as the headings of the rows in Figure 1(11), and the final consonants are shown as the headings of the columns in Figure 1(11). To generate the syllables with medials, combine Figure 1(1) with Figures 1(111) and 1(1V), overlapping the medials. Chapter 1

.

EIGURE_1(1)

Mign_Initials_and_Combinations_cf_Initials with_Medials_-y-,_w-

| P | ₽¥ | pw | t | - | ts | tsy | LSW | c | k | kw | |
|----|-----|-----|----|----|-----|------|------|----|----|------|---|
| ph | phy | phw | th | - | tsh | tshy | tshw | ch | kh | k hw | |
| b | ьу | - | d | dy | dz | dz y | - | t | 9 | gw | |
| ពរ | niy | ar. | n | ny | - | Riy | mw | ŗ | 3 | nw | |
| ስጨ | - | - | hn | - | - | - | hmw | hŋ | ħŋ | - | |
| f | fy | fw | • | | s | sy | | | | | h |
| | | | 1 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | h] | | | | | | | | |
| W | | | | | | | | y | | | |
| กพ | | | | | | | | hy | | | |

NOIE: Unaspirated sonorant initials are preglottalized in the odd-numbered tones.

EIGURE_1(11)

| | -9 | -? | -P | -t | -k | -sn | - R | -ត | ~ ¥ | - W |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----|------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| a | - | a? | aþ | at | ak | am | 2N | 3 1 | ay | aw |
| a: | a:0 | - | a :p | a:t | - | a : ¥ | a‡n | a‡n | a‡y | a:n |
| i | . i :9 | 12 | ip | it | ik . | îm | , in | in | - | īw |
| 19 | iəø | iə? | isp | iət | - | iən | iən | - | - | iəw |
| U | 11 : S | u? | - | ut | æ | - | un | un | uy | - |
| цЭ | uə f | uə? | • | uət | - | nsæ | UƏN | • | цэу | - |
| e | e:g | e? | ер | et | ek | en | en | en | - | ew |
| ε | 8:3 | E? | - | ٤t | EK | ER | £ 8 | EN | - | - |
| C | c:9 | 0? | ср | - | ok | Ca | cn | GR | cy | - |
| Э | D:5 | ว? | ЭP | St | Эk |) a | ən | ວຄ | 54 | - |
| ə | ə:3 | -4 | - | - | | | ən | - | əy | ən |
| === 1 1 1 1 | | | | | | | | | | r |

Mien Rimes in Syllables Withcut Medials

- ⇒ occurs fully stressed only in <hmz> [Amm] `five', (Numeral Set I and IV), ctherwise in reduced syllables.
- \$\$\$ occurs only in some dialects in two contraction forms
 []n] `this' [_n] `that (near adcressee)', full forms
 being [] nay] and [_ nay], respectively. My informant used [m] in these forms.

| | -,Ð | -? | -p | - t | -k | -m | - n | -ŋ | -γ | -w- |
|-----|--------|-----|------|------|----|------|----------------|-------|------------|------|
| ya | - | - | - | yat | - | - | - | yaŋ | yay | yan |
| ya: | ya:U | - | ya:þ | ya∓t | - | A≥±m | - | ya:ŋ | ya:y | ya:w |
| yu | - | yu? | - | yut | - | - | yun | yug | AnA | - |
| ye | ye : U | - | ye? | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| yε | ye:u | - | - | y£t | - | - | - | veg | - | - |
| ус | ya:9 | - | уср | - | - | ÀOIF | - | - | - | - |
| cy | yo:9 | y>? | - | y>t | - | УЭШ | y>n | l c a | - · | - |

<u>Mien_Rimes_in_Syllables_with_-y-_Mecial</u>

EIGURE_1(JY)

| | g | -3 | -р | -t | -k | -3 | -n | -ŋ | -y | -1 |
|-------|------|-----|----|------|----|----|-------|------|------|-----|
| wa | - | wa? | - | wat | - | - | nən | naŋ | way | - |
| wa: | na:Ø | - | - | wa:t | - | - | na in | wain | wa‡y | - |
| ĸ i Ə | - | - | - | - | - | • | wiən | • | - | - |
| we | - | - | - | wet | - | - | hen | - | - | - |
| ж£ | - | w£3 | - | - | - | - | - | wEŋ | - | -] |

Mien_Rives_in_Syllables_with_-w-_Ledial

1.3.11 <u>Historical origin_of_tbs_segmental_material</u>. There are many gaps in the data, but for an attempted reconstruction of the sounds of Iu-Mien back to Miso-Yao see Purnell 1970, and remarks in Downer (1973:8-10). For correspondence with Chinese see Downer (1973), Benedict (1985), and discussion in Solnit (n.d. Section 1, 6.1).

1.3.2 <u>The tones of Miens</u> These are:

- 1. upper mid level 7
- 2. mid.falling Y

3. high, sometimes rising-falling 7, 7

4. rising-falling, somewhat breathy A

5. rising 1

6. Icn, creaky d

7. high, checked 7'

8. Icw, checked _

Tones 1-6 occur in live syllables, 7 and 8 in dead syllables. It is convenient in transcription to combine Tones 7 with 3, and 8 with 6, as we have cone. Aspirated initials, except [h-] itself, do not co-cocur with the even-numbered tones in native Mien words. There seems to be a certain tendency among the younger generation to replace Tone 4 with Tone 5.

1.3.21 <u>Jone_correspondence_with_Chinese</u> The tones are numbered here in the manner of Chinese linguistics: cddnumbers for "clear", even for "mucdy":

> A: 1,2 B: 3,4 C: 5,6 D: 7,8

(see Chang (1972, or n.d.) for details). The point is that while the tones can be reconstructed, at least in terms of correspondence-rules if not in phonetic shape, back to proto-Miao-Yao, they correspond in quite a regular way with the Chinese historical tone-categories in items of shared vocabulary. The correspondence is one-to-one in pre-modern strata of shared vocabulary, but the correspondence is many-to-one and the corresponding elements are different in the modern stratum of Chinese loanwords in Mien where Southwest Mandarin's five tones are being matched up against Mien's eight (see Downer 19773:10).

1.3.22 Jone-sandhi. There are two rules:

- (1) Tones 1-6 become Tone 2 (or something close enough to be incistinguishable from it).
- (2) Tones 7 and 8 become Tone 8 (or, again, something close enough to be indistinguishable from it).

For discussion see Downer (1961), Purnell (1965: Sec. 2.22, 1968:xIII), and Court: forthcoming, and passim in the present work.

1.3.3 Intonation. This has been described in considerable detail in Purnell (1968:Sec.2.211 and 2.22). In general it seems an excellent account but since 1 have not been able to replicate it in certain details, nor to get complete agreement among my informants, I will not go further into the matter here except to remark (a) that intonation tends to interact in idiosyncratic ways with each lexical tone, and (b) that in general intonation plays a bigger role in Nien than, say, Thai, because it has a special intonation where Thai uses the particle \underline{ruv} . This is the meta-question⁴ intonation (see Chapter 2 s.v. structure of questions).

1.3.4 Junctures_cr_pauses. We have distinguished two pausal junctures -- "," comma-juncture, and "." periodjuncture. In terms of rhythm a period-juncture is longer than a comma-juncture, and the pitch-phenomena involved I have on occasion marked in phonetic brackets, and for the rest would in general equate period-juncture with Purnell (1965)'s "normal intonation", and comma-juncture with his "sustained intonation" (op. cit. Sec. 2.211, 2.22).

1.3.5 Orthography. The following changes will produce the intermediate-period missionary orthography, which we have followed (except perhaps in one or two minor details) in the present work.

"c" > "jh", "j" > "j", "j" > "ny",
"hj" > "hny", "j" > "ng", "fij" > "hng",
"gw" > "ngw", "-?" > "-q", "a:" > "aa",
"uoy" > "ae", "uoy" > "uoy" > "hei",
"oy" > "oei",

"io" > "ia" > before "-g" and "-?",

> "ie" elsewhere,

"O" > "aw", except that "oy" > "oi"

"ƏR as pure nuclear vowel > "ue", except that "Əy > "ei"".

In addition the intermediate-period orthography has "r" [r], "uei" [0:j], and "uea" [+0], equivalents for which were lacking in the old orthography, for representing words from other languages. The tones are indicated by silent final consonant letters as follows:

Tone 1 unmarked Tone 2 *-h* ٠ Tones 3 and 7 • -v= Tone 4 8-2ª • Tone 5 ~_x ~ • Tones 6 and 8 *-c* •

An additional detail of my own is the use of $-D^{w}$ to mark tones which are <u>phonetically</u> like Tone 2, but which are not identifiable <u>phonologically</u> either as Tone 2 or a sandhitone, because we have not discovered the morpheme bearing it as a free form, where the phonological tone would be identifiable.

CHAPTER II

THE TYPES OF SIMPLE SENTENCES: THE SENTENCE TOPIC; THE CLAUSE; SENTENCES SIMPLE AND COMPOSITE; PARTS OF SPEECH

2.1. Introduction. We have found it useful, following Matisoff (1973:Chapter II), to recognize the chain of speech in Mien as being broken into utterances, of various functions, and structurally consisting of either sentences or fragments. The sentences are either simple or composite. In terms of order of constituents sentences may also be permuted. Still following Matisoff op. cit. the basic terminology that we shall be using for types of sentences and linguistically significant parts of sentences may be presented as a kind of deductive system in which certain concepts ("head", "constituency", "behaves as a grammatical unit", "relationship") are left undefined. In the following definitions, our approach is eclectic. Sometimes elements are defined in terms of their syntactic structure, and sometimes operationally (e.c., boundable by a pause, precedable by the negative adverb, and so on).

2.2. <u>The utterance</u>: The utterance is a stretch of meaningful speech that conforms to the rules of Mien grammar as we shall here describe them.

23.

.....

2.3. <u>The sentence</u>. A sentence is represented in the utterance by a stretch of speech bounded by pauses, or potentially bounded by pauses, terminated by certain intonations and/or particles, and containing at least one phrase.

What is bounded by the process may be a simple 2.3.1 or composite utterance. A sentence is a free form. since it is bounded by pauses at both ends and hence producible in isolation. Thus, Kyia my mingh> *I am not going* (*I not co") is already a sentence, but <yia mv mingh ao> 'I am not coing any more ("I not go NEH-SIT ASP") is an enlarged sentence of which (yia my mingh) forms only a part. Again Kninh my taaih. yia my minch? 'He is not coming. I am not going' represents a sequence of two sentences but if the nause between <taaih> and <via> is omitted, then the whole thing is one composite sentence, showing typical parataxis, and meaning either 'He is not coming and I am not going' or else 'If/when he doesn't come, I won't/don't go' -- for discussion of composite sentences, see Sections 2.3.4.3, 2.3.4.3.2 below.

2.3.2 <u>Prosodic_elements_may_distinguish_different</u> <u>constituent_groupings_within_the_sentence.</u> Just as prosodic elements mark off the sentence, so they distinguish different_groupings-into-sentence-constituents of the same sequence of sentence building elements, thus producing_dif-

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

ferent sentences; e.q., <ninh tsoux (,) mv longx> (with an optional break after <tsoux>) "That he does it is not good; he had better not do it? versus <ninh tsoux mv longx> "He cannot do it well?, in which there is no possibility of a break after <tsoux>. The comma-break establishes what precedes it as a topic (see Section 2.3 above, and Section 2.3.4.3.2.1).

2.3.3 Utterances and sentences as speech acts. We may distinguish at least six kinds of speech act, [1] and each of them is typically realized by a particular kind of sentence:

(a) <u>Statements of states of affairs</u>: these take the form of declarative sentences,

(b) Promptings to the interlocutor to act or to feel in some particular way, taking the form of commands, suggestions, requests, entreaties, appeals for calm, sympathy, etc.: (mv tuqv kawnqv) 'Don't say it', (plaqv pyauv oc) 'Do come in', (tsueix oc) 'Do sit down', (thov tsaah oc) 'Please give me some tea' ("[I] request tea Prt "), (pyaux polit goix!) 'Get out!' ("Move [so as to be] separated!"), (taeoc naiv!) 'Come here!' (contracted from (taaih naiv));

[1] Although the inspiration of Searle 1970 is evident here, we have not attempted a rigorous application to Mien of Searlean illocutionary-act categories.

(c) <u>Questions</u>: e.a., <meih finax haiv-nyuncc?> `What is your surname?', <viem lonax nyei?> `Are you well?',

(d) <u>Addressative_expressions.</u> including calls to people. in Mien often followed by the vocative particle (aa). e.g., (kawx aa!> *Excuse me, friend* ("D big brother"), and the reduplicative and asyndetic (kawx kawx viouz viouz) (129) *Friends (male)*. ("Big-brother big-brother [and] little-brother little-brother" -- as if we said in English "Lady, lady; gentleman, gentleman for "Ladies and Gentlemen").

(e) <u>Responses to utterance types [a]=[c]:</u> =.g., responses to addressative expressions: <aax> `Yes?; What?', <haiv-nyungc?> `Yes?' ("What?"), and the response used in answering the telephone: <haiv-tauh?> `Who is this?; who is speaking?' ("Who?").

(f) Exclamations: E.g., (1) <tse-kengh?!> 'Really?!; You don't say!', < | ov! sim pagy yia!> "Buch! I got pricked by a needle! ("Buch! Needle prick me"), (2) <khaw0-figy haic ea> (L 140) 'What a great pity!' ("regret much Prt " f-exclam (3) <feix/tugy bengx pwatc meih> (L 197) 'Bh, that I could see you again!', (4) <aa/yuv!> (L 6, an exclamation of surprise, dismay, or exasperation), and (5) <yiouv-g> (L 313, an exclamation of pain; 'Buch!'.

Ĵ۴ 2.3.31 Final_remarks_on_sentences_as_speech_acts. course, as is well known, there is no one-to-one correspondence between kinds of speech act and kinds of sentence: c.q., in English a prompting to action may, for politeness" sake, take the form of a question, e.g., "Won't you sit down?". Greetings are a kind of addressative expression and yet in Mien a very common greeting is in the form of a quest tion: (yiem longx nyei saa?) which in the absolute means Are you well? ("[You] be-in-a-state be-well Prt assert "], but situationally means "Good day!", and the Prt quest response is in the form of a declarative sentence (yiem longx nyei> 'Yes I am well' ("I be-well Prt Ψ). assert

2.3.4 <u>Structure of the sentence</u>. We will distinguish between a sentence and a clause, and assume, for the sake of exposition, a sentence as far as possible context-free, i.e., initial in a discourse (except for responses to calls), and free of anaphora and ellipsis. Other kinds of sentences can easily be understood as situational or contextual alterations of these.

>

Sentence consists of (a) an optional topic (Top) followed by an obligatory comment (Com), followed by an optional final particle (Prt) or (b) a Vecative Expression or (c) a sf Pesponse to an utterance-type of (a)-(c) of Section 2.3.3 above, or (d) an Exclamation.

2

(2)
Topic -->
$$\begin{cases}
(a) \quad Clause \quad (Dem \) \\
(b) \quad NP \quad (Prt \) \\
(c) \quad VP
\end{cases}$$

The topic consists either of (a) a clause, or of (b) a NP or (c) of a VP, in each case followed by an optional topic demonstrative (Dem) or topic particle (Prt). The contop top top

.

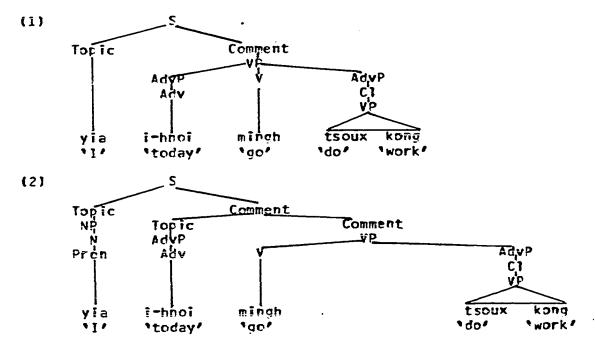
Comment consists of a VP, or else of an indefinite number (though in practice at most four or five) of clauses.

A clause consists of (a) an optional NP, followed by an obligatory VP, or (b) of a sentence.[2]

[2] Note that the effect of my rules is to distinguish two different levels of drammatical analysis, the <u>sentence</u> and the <u>clause</u>, as was indeed both the ancient and modern grammatical tradition until the perspective of transformational

2.3.41 <u>The topic as a sentence constituent: the</u> <u>"Natural Topic Hierarchy"</u>. A topic may represent the agent of an event or the subject of an adjective, or the general setting or scene of an event or state of affairs -- time, place and so on -- and may take the form of a clause, or a

grammar blurred the distinction. The distinction is however still going strong in various current grammatical theories. Note that rule 3(a) the NP is, by our non-insistence on the topic/subject distinction, a topic-cum-subject. Further grammatical investigation is needed to determine to what extent the full set of topicalizable entities is admissible at clause, as opposed to <u>sentence</u>-level: whether, for example, in a sentence such as (yia i-hnoi mingh tsoux kong) 'I'm going to work today', we can identify the structure, as, say (I) or (2) below, or perhaps even as something else (note that it is possible that in both (I) and (2) (mingh tsoux kong) 'go to work' is a constituent, but that needs further investigation and is irrelevant for the present purpose):





VP, The form of a clause, or a VP, as well as the prototypical form of an NP, without the clause or VP having to be specifically nominalized, although they do, along with NP's, have to occupy the leftmost position in the sentence, and they may, but need not be followed by topicalizing demonstratives or particles. These latter should perhaps be recarded as nominalizing-cum-topicalizing demonstratives or These latter should perhaps be regarded as particles. nominalizing-cum-topicalizing entities, in order to bring languages such as Mien, which allow Clauses and VP's to be topicalized -- and this is an areal feature that includes Chinese and Thai -- into line with the apparent universal fact (or perhaps it is a matter of definition) that topics are nominal (see, for instance, Li and Thompson 1976:fn. 3). They would presumably count as "inanimate nouns", demonstrating the Mien, like other languages in the area, can topicalize to the bottom of the "Natural Topic Hierarchy".[3]

[3] According to Foley and Van Valin (1977:294),

"There appears to be a universal hierarchy of inherent topic-worthiness [sc. of nominal expressions] called variously the "Natural Topic Hierarchy" (Hawkinson and Hyman 1975), "Inherent Lexical Content Hierarchy" (Silverstein 1977) and "Referentiality Hierarchy" (Foley 1976). The Hierarchy in universal terms is:

speaker > hearer > human proper
> human common > animate
> inanimate."

2.3.411 Nominal expression as topic. (A slash divides the topic from the rest of the sentence). E.g., (yia / lagc-khuatv mun> (L 288) 'my chest hurts' ("I / chest hurt"), (tomb-mienh nyei tsingh-nyeic / kwangc mv goi> 'The generosity of one's elders cannot be ignored' ("Elders Prt generosity / [if one] discards [it, it does] not subord [result in it] being-separated").

2.3.412 <u>The verb phrase as topic</u>[4] E.g., <mingc / yaac tuqc, mv mingh / yaac tuqc> 'One can either go or not' ("go / also be-possible, not gn / also be-possible"), <hlaang / yaac hlaang, daauv / yaac daauv> 'It is indeed both high and long' ("[As for] being-high / indeed be-high, [as for] being-long / indeed be-long"), <gaengx / oixftsugc lov

[4] It is arguable that what is the topic here is underlyingly a <u>clause</u>, so that the present section should not be separated from Section 2.4.1.6 below. To this we would reply that it is by no means always easy to say what the deep structure subject of such a clause would be, and that in any case, hewing closely to the surface structure makes for a much more readable, if less principled, account.

Given our understanding of the "topic", i.e., not strictly differented from the "subject" and representing simply the leftmost NP, or other grammatical structure in the sentence or clause, and set off actually or potentially from the rest of the sentence or clause in various ways (for a distinction between subject and topic see Section 2.3.4.2 fn.). There is nothing in the above hierarchy that cannot be topicalized, and there are other things -- adverbial phrases of time and place, verb phrases, whole clauses, in fact virtually enything, that can. That is to say, we do not accept Li and Thompson's (1976) limitation of the topic to NP's.

tshuatv> (L 144) 'If somethine gets stuck in the throat it should be vomited out' ("have-obstruction-in-throat / haveto vomit out") <tsweiz jhunh / huv> (L 104) 'Sitting on the skirt will spoil it' ("sit [on] skirt / [will result in it] be-spoiled").

2.3.413 <u>Time expression as topic.</u> E.g., <hnaand*hnoi / cix khoi uic> (L 9) 'There will be a meeting the day after tomorrow' ("The-after-tomorrow day / [some person(s)] want hold meeting"), <mv teix tshaamx hnoi / via mv maaih kong tsoux> 'These days I have no work' ("This PLURAL period-oftime-from-twelve-to-twenty-days / I not have work to-do"), <i-hnoi / maaih maenec yiem, jaang*hnoi / taic / yaac mv hiuv tugv> (L 360) 'Today we are alive, but we do not know whether or not we will be dead tomorrow* ("Today / [we] have life PRDG-ASP, tomorrow [whether we will] die / indeed not know be-able*). Note that the second half of this sententious utterance is itself an entire clause with a double topic: see Section 2.3.4.1.6.3 below.

2.3.414 <u>Place expression as topic</u>. E.g., (yiem uav pyauv / yia aav-tsuge thengx maa haie> "At home, I have to help my mother a lot' ("be-located there house / I must help mother very-much"), (yiem ninh / benge sung taaih> (L 311) "Through him [the matter] was satisfactorily settled' ("belocated-at him / [one] deal-with [the matter, with the

result that it] he-settled PERF-ASP*) (yietc teix haiv-dau / yaac mv mingh ac) (L 363) *Not a single place did he [now] go to* (*One someness [of] anywhere / indeed not go NEW-SIT ASP*).

2.3.415 <u>Iopics that can be interpreted as agents</u> <u>introduced by a preposition</u>. (yaac liemh ninh / taaih) (L 284) 'And even he came' ("Also including him / come"),[5] (yiem ninh / benge sung taaih) (L 311) 'Through him [the matter] was satisfactorily settled' ("be-at him / arrange be-settled PERF ASP").

2.3.416 <u>Clauses as topics</u>. E.q., (1) (ninh-bua taaih / yaac tuqv, mv taaih / yaac tuqv> 'They can either come or not' ("They come / also be-possible, [they] not come / also te-possible"), (2) (yia-bua mv maaih mienh nawfaeq / tsoux maiv tsiangx> 'If we don't have a person to help, it won't get finishedf ("We not have person to-help / Lif wel do [it] it [will] not [result in] being-finished"). (3) (ninh taic naic / yia dawtc hnyiouv haic nyei> 'I am very sorry that he died' ("He die Dem / I fall heart very-much DUR-ASP"). top

^[5] Cf. Chao 1968:85:86, who cites from French an example (not his own) of an analogous construction: <u>Jusou'aux enfants furent massacrés</u> 'They were massacred, even down to the children' ("Down to the children [they] were massacred").

In the above examples, either the conjunction (yaac) valso; indeed or the topicalizing demonstrative (naic), or the topicalizing particle (nawfaeg) 'as for' mark the transition from topic to comment (see Section 2.3.4.2, et seq.), but it is possible for the juncture to be paratactic, i.e., for there to be no particles or adverbs to mark the transition: e.g., (1) <mv maaih jhaa / mv maaih faangx> (L 99) Without a family, there is no status' ("Not there-be family / not there-be status"), (2) <lungh mv tuih byungc / koiv tugy mingh> (L 30) 'If it doesn't rain, then we can change our plans and do' ("Sky not precipitate rain / there-be-arevision be-able co"), (3) Kmeih kawngv siepv-siepv, yia mv piege hnyiouv> 'If (or 'When') you speak duickly, I don't understand/ ("You speak be-quick=be-quick / I not enter heart"), and (4) <mh teix i tauh mingh haiv/dau / mv haih mingh> The two of them were not up to going anywhere ("Dem PLU two Cif go where / not be-able to go").

2.3.4161 <u>Survey of account of topic so far</u>. We have suggested so far that various entities including time expressions, verb phrases and clauses may be topics, and that topic verb phrases might underlyingly be clausal.

We would like at this point to hark back to an example sentence in Section 2.3.4.1.3 above and provide a possible tree diagram of its surface constituent structure, assuming

that its two immediate-constuent clauses are in topiccomment (i.e., hetero-ordinate) relationship (see below). Note that what are semantically time-expressions (likewise place expressions), and were so called in Section 2 3.4.1.3, are syntactically adverbial phrases.

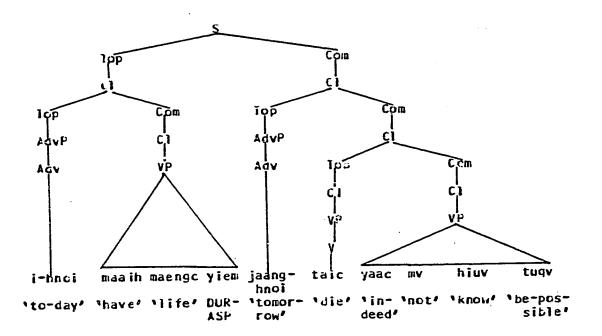
FIGURE 2(1)

<u>The Upper-Level Constituent Structure of</u> <u>a Sentence, Showing Multiple Lavers of</u> <u>Topic-Comment Structure</u>

<i-hoi_maaih_maengc_yiem,

jaang/hnoi_taic_yaac_my_hiuy_tugy>

*<u>Even_if_today_we_are_alive,_we_still_do_not</u> know_whether_cr_not_we_will_be_dead_tomorrow.



2.3.417 <u>Sentences with resultative complements: are</u> they of "topic-comment" structure? A notable areal feature of China and South East Asia is the resultative complement construction, in which the second clause, commonly reduced

to a bare verb, expresses the result of the first: e.g., with unreduced second clause <meih jhaaux tuqv / yia plaqc hnyiouv> (L 112) 'You are able to teach in such a way that I can understand' ("You teach be-possible [resulting in] I enter heart"), or <ninh hatv tuqv / fuqc-jhweic buagc> (cf. L 54) 'He is able to command the respect and obedience of the children' ("He command be-able [resulting in] the children be-respectful/ obedient/cooperative").

We may have a bare verb representing the second clause, as in mienh naiv / jaaux / mv mwangx> (cf. L 112) *Thisperson does not do as he is taught ("This person [somebody]teach not [result in his] listening*), and naiv paengc /tsawc / longx> (cf. L 69) *This illness / can be treated /successfully/ ("This illness treat [result-in] recovering*).

We would like to suggest that it is possible to interpret these resultative sentences as having the structure "topic-comment", with topic-comment breaks at the places where we have marked them, and with the verb 'to result in having to be mentally supplied (see Section 2.3.4.2.1 below).

To the extent that our investigations so far have determined, not only do sentences or clauses with resultative complements seem to fit perfectly into the topiccomment pattern (a claim which may raise some eyebrows), but

37。

perhaps more surprisingly, clauses that translate into English as "action verb + adverb of manner" also seem to fit this pattern: cf. the resultative complement sentence Ktsweiz jhunh / huv> (L 104) \If [you] sit on the skirt it will spoil it! ("sit skirt / be-spoiled"), and <fiav dzaangc / uv haic> (cf. 1 9) 'to [be able] to write [i.e., to form written characters] curningly' ("write characters / becunning very") or <mwangz / longx oc> (L 249) *Do listen "), (yia jhuix dzuanx carefully' ("Listen / be-good Prt polit mingh / lauh ac> (L 105) *I sent it back long ago? (*) send return / be-a-long-time NEW-SIT-ASP*). Here we can still bring it under the resultative semantic scheme: -- "to write characters so that the result is cunningness", "to listen so that the result is carefulness".[6]

^[6] In the present grammar I am not, as ! have said, primarily interested in linguistic theory or syntactic argumentation. Many phenomena do not belong in a clear-cut way to one category or another. Thus as a syntactic test of topic-comment structure we might propose the method of negation: it could be suggested that the criterion for topic-comment structure is negatability by the expression <mv tseiz> 'not to be; not to be the case; etc.' Now the normal way to negate a sentence with a resultative complement is to insert the simple negative particle <maiv> or <mv> between the action-verb and the result clause: for instance, our example sentence <tsweiz jhunh / huv> (L 104) 'If [you] sit on the skirt, it will spoil it' ("Sit skirt / Iresults in] be-spoiled") would be negated as <tsweiz jhunh / mv huv>. 'It won't spoil it if you sit on the skirt' ("Sit skirt / not [result-in] be-spoiled").

2.3.42 <u>The semantics of the topic-comment construct</u> tion. We have for the most part not found it necessary in Mien to distinguish between topics and subjects.[7] Thus for a sentence such as (yia / lagc-khuatv mun> (L 2PB) "My chest hurts' ("I / chest hurt"), though we have said that the first NP (yia> 'I' is the topic, we will not insist on a difference between topics and subjects, so that we might equally well call this sentence either a "double-subject sentence" or a "double-topic sentence". When we use the word "topic" in the strict sense, we mean the first "subject" in a "double-subject sentence" and/or a constituent set off by a topicalizing item (the latter to be defined by listing, while "subject" is thus left to refer to any NP other than a topic hefore the VP.

But it seems possible to describe the semantic relationship between topics and their comments, and subjects and their predicates by a single set of statements, and we have expressed the view that all simple declarative sentences in Mien that are not elliptical, or anaphoric consist of a comment preceded by one or more topics (see Section 2.3.4). The semantic relationship in Mien of topic-cum-subject to

^[7] The term and concept "pivot" as used here and in Section 2.3.4.4.9.2 is a surface structure term borrowed from Chao (1968:124), and intersects but does not coincide with the transformationally defined term as used by Heath (1975) and Nixon (1979) (both cited in Foley and Van Valin (1984:108 et seq.).

comment is comparable to the topic-comment semantic relationship in other languages such as English, i.e., much broader than the Indo-European subject-predicate relation -which tends semantically to be either "agent-action" or "subject-state" -- although the Mien relationship includes these.

A case in which the topic is in fact the agent is provided by the sentence <nawfaeq wuav tauh auv aeqv / tawh jhienv dzuanx taaih> %And so the widow (lit. "wife") brought Litl back/ ("And so Dem Clf wife take do-for-futurereference return come").

2.3.421 <u>Sentences where verbs have to be mentally supp</u> <u>clied.</u> An instance of the "subject-state" meaning is (tseiv muic wuav tauh aq / mO-siaqv/tawn> 'Tsei Mui, for her part, was a girl? ("Tse Mui Dem Clf Prt / [be] female-humantop being"). It should be noted that there is no verb in this sentence -- at least on the surface, and this is typical when, semantically, membership in a class is being predicated of, or rather, is the comment being made about, the topic. We may like to think of the sentence as containing a zero-verb 'to be'. But other topic-comment sentences force us to "think into them" other zero-verbs.

Take, for instance, <mua tauh mienh / duqc jhieqc tsaux> *That man has only one leg/ ("That Clf person / sin-

cle Clf leo"), where the verb <maaih> 'to have' could be inserted after the topic/comment break, although the sentence is quite crammatical without it. We seem to need a meaning cf "to be afflicted by" in Kmh tauh auv-kwaav-mienh naic / toc-neanc nyei> "The widow was having a very difficult time" / trying-difficulties PROG-ASP*), ("That Clf widow Nem top while it is 'to yield, to produce' that seems to have to be "thought into" the sentence Kyietc nawm tshuqc / tsiepc tiuh miuh> (L 339) 'One rice-seed [produces] ten sprouts' ("One Clf rice-seed / ten Clf sprout*). More problematical as to the sentence structure and to the verb concept to be supplied is Kyietc seix / tomh-mienh, i seix / kuD-ngwaaz> (L 633) \[For] one life [one is] an adult, [but for] two lives -- a child', where I have taken (yietc seix) and (i seix) to be topics, but they might be quantifiers of the following noun, yielding "[One has] one life's worth of adulthood, [but] two life's-worth of childhood", in either case meaning situationally that somebody is in his/her second childhood. Finally, if sentences with resultative complements are indeed of the "topic-comment" structure, then the verb to be mentally supplied is 'to result in'.

2.3.422 <u>The topic=comment copula. se pr_sue.</u> Although Mien sentences may, as exemplified above, contain no verb at all (at least on the surface), there exists in Mien a copular particle (it actually acts very much like a verb, but

cannot be preceded by <main> the negative particle: see (hapter IV below) taken from the Chinese <u>shi</u> ((AD #B90)), which in a less assimilated form, as entered in Lombard (212), is pronounced <u>sue [1 s_]</u>, but which our informants usually pronounce <u>se</u>. It is usually, if not always optional, and given the semantic vagueness of the topic-comment relationship it is hard to give it a well-defined translation: the closest we can come is 'to be; the fact is that; it is the case that', but it is often untranslatable.[B] Let us take an easy case first, where it corresponds to the verb 'to be': <naiv / se byungc-suiv-imx nyei kouv> 'This is the story of the Great Flood' ("This <u>se</u> Great-Flood Prt subord story"). Next, let us take some examples where its meaning is clear, even if not easily translatable:

- (i) (i) (iz=hnoi naic / se lungh aiv nyei> 'Long ago the sky was low' ("Ancient-days Dem / the-fact-istop that sky be-low Prt "[9] -- later in the text assert this sentence is repeated without the <u>se</u>).
- (ii) <naic bage-ong / se kam0-dziax haic, nawmh-tsiunawmh> `The Thunder God was very afraid of them --

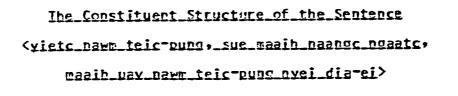
[8] The general idea of interpolating se between topic and comment is reminiscent of the Mandarin <u>shi...de</u> construction. (J.A. Matisoff, D.C.) [9] The use of <u>se</u> before a sentential comment bears an intriguing resemblance to the use of <u>iz</u> presententially in Yiddish (J.A. Matisoff, p.c.).

the banana leaves' ("Dem thunder / the-fact-isthat be-afraid very, banana-leaves"),

(iii) <meih / se chiemx-tsugc lawz haiv-nyungc fai?> `Do you want somethind?' ("You it-is-the-case want seek something Prt "). cues

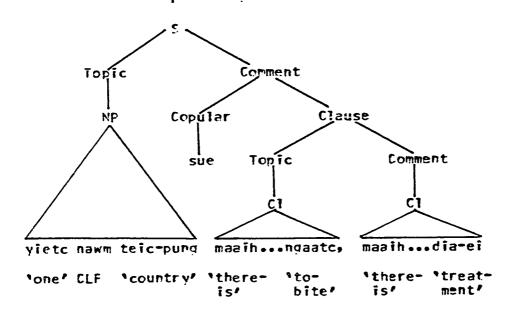
Finally we have a couple of sentences where it is clear that the main function of <u>se</u> ~ <u>sue</u> is to mark the beginning of the comment: example (1) <yietc nawm teic-pung, sue maaih naand ndaatc, maaih uav nawm teic-pung nyei dia-ei> (L 338) "In any country, if a snake bites someone, that country has its own treatment" ("One Clf country, the-fact-is there-is snake bite [someone], there is Dem Clf country Prt subord treatment"); this sentence has the structure shown in Figure 2(II),

FIGURE 2(II)



'In any country, if a snake bites someone,

that country has its own treatment'.



in which there is structural parallelism between the clauses that marks them as forming a single constituent (see Section 2.3.4.3.2.2.4 below), and this parallelism would be disrupted if the first clause were construed directly with the initial NP, as might be possible without the <u>sue</u> acting as a divider; example (2) <nawh ninh / se awv, mv lawz haiv-

ryungc> "And she said, "Dh, I'm not looking for anything"; ("Then she / Se Dh, not look-for anything"); here the Se marking the beginning of the comment is especially useful, since the comment consists of direct speech, and the word (kawngv> 'to say, speak', which usually precedes this has been onitted, presumably for the sake of narrative vividness. It could just as well be inserted, in which case it would form part of the topic: (ninh kawngv / se awv ... (etc.)> 'As for what she said / it was "Dh, ..." (etc.)', and a grammatical development seems to be under way in which (sue> or (se> is becoming the complementizer, though still cotional, for reported speech and quoted material (see, for instance, L 131).[10]

2.3.423 <u>Sentences where conjunctions have to be</u> <u>mentally supplied: parataxis</u>. So far we hope that we have demonstrated that so long as the topic-comment caesura has been adequately marked, all manner of relationships, which can be conceived of as <u>understood verbs</u>, are possible. But

^[10] It is possible that the "<... kawngv / se X>" construction (where "X" stands for quoted material) meaning '... said: "X" arises from a <u>syntactic blend</u> between one construction with (kawngv> 'say', and without (se>, in which the oucted material stands as an object of the verb of saying, and another construction without (kawngv) but with (se> functioning as a topiccomment copula and with the quoted material cast in the role not of object but of comment. If the blend of these two constructions becomes fixed, then in the juxtaposition of (kawngv) and (se>, (se> could be reinterpreted as a complementizer.

there are other cases, where both topic and comment are clauses, and what has to be "thought in" are <u>conjunctions</u> showing the logical relationship between the propositions signified by the clauses. This omission of conjunctions between clauses, is, of course, traditionally known as <u>parar</u> taxis.

It is highly characteristic of Mien, as well as being an areal feature, but in a linguistic model that distinquishes surface structure from deep structure, it is a <u>surface-structure</u> phenomenon, since it includes, as we shall see, both cases of co-ordinacy and hetero-ordinacy between the constituent clauses. E.g., <faux phaang / pouh thei> (L 337) 'To climb up onto the drying-platform and have the ladder taken away on you' ("ascend drying-platform / Land then] lift-with-two-hands Land remove] ladder" -- an aphorism which means situationally 'To be left in the lurch; to be left out on a limb*). Here the connector which has to be "thought in" is 'and (then)*, but there may be others which have to be supplied, as we shall proceed to demonstrate.

Take, for instance the sentences <saa-tawngh-dzuih, yangh-meuz=hnyicuv> (L 338) 'The mouth is sweet, but the heart is poisonous' ("Sugar-mouth / poisonous-weed heart"), <dzaangx dziemx / maaih khoiv-tawng> (L 338) 'The boat sinks, the expanse of the sea remains' ("Boat sink / [but

still] there-be the-ends-of-the-sea"), an aphorism which situationally means "An agreement must be kept, no matter what circumstances may develop later on". Note that we may semantically conceive of the propositions in the last three sentences as being related either under schema (a) "Proposition but (or and) Proposition ", or schema (b) "Even 1 2 if/though Proposition, nevertheless Proposition ",[11] and this seems to mean that the sentence is ambiguous[12] between being <u>coordinate</u> (schema (a)) or <u>non-coordinate</u> (schema (b)): "subordinate (concessive) Proposition -- principal Proposition".

Another meaning of the topic-comment relationship where both topic and comment are clauses is "<u>If</u> Proposition (i.e., the topic), <u>then</u> Proposition (i.e., the comment)", and indeed all conditional sentences have the structure "Topic-

[11] Dr, with a loss of the adversative/concessive meaning, schema (c) when Proposition2, then Proposition2 (see below regarding the meaning "if" shading into "when".

[12] Rather than being a case of <u>semantic</u> ambiguity this might also be regarded as being simply one of <u>structural ambiguity</u>, with each interpretation, if indeed the interpretations <u>are</u> truly different, having corresponding to it a different <u>deep</u> structure. For expository purposes it seems to matter little whether we regard the ambiguity as semantic or structural, except that the latter interpretation implies an obligation on the part of the language-describer to go into tedious attempts to reconstruct the deep structure, when the ambiguity, of whatever kind it may be, is easily grasped, and the linguist has much else on the surface to describe.

Comment", with the protasis forming the topic and the apordosis the comment, whether or not the relations are overtly marked by conditional conjunctions or particles. Two examples showing parataxis, i.e., having no conjunctions and particles, are <kaav taaih / oixftsugc jhaauv> (L 124) *If someone has borrowed [money], then they have to repay it? ("borrow PERF-ASP / must repay"), and Klungh mv tuih byunge / koiv tugy mingh> (L 130) Mf it doesn't rains de can change our plans and go' ("Sky not precipitate rain / revise he-possible go"). The meaning of 'if' easily shades into or 'whenever': witness the second-last sentence when/ above, and the sentences Kmeih kawnov siepv-siepv / via mv plage hnyiouv> 'If/when you speak quickly I don't understand/ ("You speak be-quick=be-quick / I not enter heart"), and Kninhfbua dzuanx taaih / yia mvftaih pun sou ninhfbua> (L 361) 'Of course I'll give them the books when they return/ ("They return come / 1 of-course give books them").[13]

^[13] We would suggest that it is just as risky to suggest that speakers of Mien understand the relationship between paratactic clauses in terms of (syntactic) deep structure, as it is to claim that the speakers understand the relationship between the elements of nominal compounds in terms of (syntactic) deep structures. The footnote below regarding the underlying structure of compound nouns applies <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to paratactic clauses, except that perhaps <u>context</u> is more important and as a factor additional to real-world knowledge in the interpretation of paratactic clauses than it is with compounds.

2.3.424 <u>Concluding remarks on topic-comment semant</u> <u>tics.</u> The vagueness of the Mien topic-comment semantic relationship is perfectly comparable to Chinese (see Chao 1968:69-72), much broader than the subject-predicate relationship in European languages, and indeed, given the number and variety of things that can be left understood, it would seem broader than the topic-comment relationship in European languages.

2.3.43 <u>Sentences simple_and_composite</u>. So far we have described in some detail, and down to a certain level, the form and the semantics of the sentence. We have gone into the form and semantics of the topic-comment structure of the sentence. We have discussed cases in which the <u>topic</u> was a <u>clause</u> or a VP (which, although it lacks a subject/topic, is for many purposes equivalent to a clause). These constitute one kind of <u>composite</u> sentence -- i.e., one kind of sentence in which two or more sentences (or clauses) find themseives in close combination forming a single unitary sentence.

In practical analysis, several more or less severe problems have to be dealt with, largely arising from the facts (a) that Mien is not a written language, and lacks punctuation, (b) that Mien is (at least in its surface structure) markedly paratactic and asyndetic -- clauses (or VP/s) are just strung together with conjunctions largely op-

Chapter II

tional. These include (a) deciding which strings of words are candidates for <u>clausehood</u> (see Section 2.3.4.3.1 below), (b) deciding which strings of clauses group themselves together into single composite sentences (see Section 2.3.4.3.2 below), and (c) deciding what is the relationship among the constituent clauses of a complex sentence -- coordination, or hetero-ordination of one kind or another (see Section 2.3.4.4 below),

2.3.431 <u>Which strings of verbs or verbophrases</u> constitute clauses? The essential problem here is a form of parataxis with reduction, viz. the areal linguistic feature of <u>verb-serialization</u> or <u>VP-serialization</u> in which strings of verbs and verb-phrases routinely find themselves in juxtaposition, and which is further complicated in these languages by the process of <u>zero-anaphora</u>, and sometimes too by <u>pronoun</u> or <u>name-avoidance</u>, which places even more verbs and verb phrases cheek by jowl. We will defer discussion of this topic, assuming in the following sections that this particular problem has been solved.

2.3.432 <u>Composite sentence or separate sentences</u>? Since a composite sentence consists of clauses each of which may well seem complete in itself, how can one tell whether any given succession of clauses in surface structure represent parts of a composite sentence or simply separate

sentences? This depends on several factors: (a) prosodic elements, such as pause, intenation and voice-duality (through these features require further study), (b) adverbs or conjunctions as markers, and (c) parallelism of the sentences.

2.3.4321 Prosodic elements. In KiD-hnoi hnoi yaauc haic {,/.} yie mvfpaac minch tshuatv mv tugv> 'The weather is very good today {, but/. But} I can't go out/ ("Today day be-good very {,/.] I but do emerge not can*), it seems to be basically the presence of a pause corresponding to the "." which marks the utterance as representing two sentences, though there could well be intonational or voice-quality features playing a part: e.g., the final word of the first segment of the utterance, Khaic> 'very' has a low tone, and it seems to be a rule that a low tone is accompanied by creaky voice at sentence-boundaries. In the following sentence, we would expect prosodic elements, requiring further investigation, to be performing a double function: (i) welding the two clauses into a single sentence, and (ii) distinquishing the coordinate structure of meaning (a) from the con-coordinate structure of meaning (b): <meih pwatv yia, yia pwatc meih>, (a) You see me, [and] I see you, and (b) 'If/When you see re, I see you'.[14]

[14] Two empirical questions are involved here: (1) what prosodic means are available -- potentially there -- in order to resolve structural ambiguity in the .

2.3.4322 Iopicalizers and conjunctions == single.

2.3.43221 <u>Iopicalizers and single conjunctions.</u> Single conjunctions such as (aengx) (L 4) (with variant (aangx) (L 7, 338 No. 24), and (aengx-tshaux) 'and', used, apparently indifferently, before the topic of the second clause), and (yaac) (L 314) 'and; also: however: even so: moreover', and (yiouc) (L 313) 'and; also', (mv#paac) (L 234) 'but; Nowever: also', (tshingx) (L 175), (tshingx-taaih) (L 175) and perhaps (taaih) alone (in one of its many uses, lit. "to come"), and (tsiouc) (L 71), all of which are used immediately before the VP within the comment, and mean 'and so, therefore, then, after that', and finally the topicalizing demonstrative (naic) and the topicalizing particles (naw), (aeg) or (naw#aeg) used at the end of a clause (and so topicalizing it), can all combine clauses into compound sentences:

(i) Kmv paencx patv naiv / jhiedv, aendx-tshaux mv paengx patv / yaangh> 'This pen is black, and this pen is vellow' ("This Clf pen Dem / be-black, top and this Clf pen be-yellow");

language as a spoken medium; and (2) in any particular utterance or act of speaking, whether any of these means was actually used (and if so which one(s)), or whether in this case the utterance is structurally ambiguous.

- (ii) <uix aapv / yaac maiv tugv hlo> (L 129) *We keep ducks but they don't live long enough to get big? ("[We] keep ducks / but-even-so [they] not get-to be-big");
- (iii) <..., yunh-phaiv / yiouc hlawn dawtc micfaq>
 (L 315) `..., and the firing-chamber fell out with
 a clatter' ("..., firing-chamber / also clatter
 fall IPREV-NEW-SIT-ASP");
- (iv) <yunaz taaih tawn-jhweiv dongc naiv tshamv / mvf paac hnangv mv naw aix ninh> 'She had brought this multitude of children into the world, but they were using to Fill her like this/ ("[She] givebirth-to PERF-ASP children be-as-much-as this bemany, but [they] like this way kill her"):

- (vii) <meih mv maaih nyaanh nawfaeq / meih tsiouc maaiz mv tugv> \If/Since/When you don't have any money,

it is not possible for you to buy it ("You not have money Prt / you [therefore] buy not betop possible").

But these conjunctions may have to be considered <u>along</u> with <u>cther</u> <u>factors</u> in order to decide the question of whether or not they are in the same sentence as the preceding clause, since they often seem to be in a <u>new</u> sentence, e.g., (vien naiv / tshingx hwaax kan pun doi taaih> (L 301) "Then it was that the transformation and [resulting] division took place' ("be-located there / then transform accompany give/cause be-separate PERF-ASP").

The onset of a conditional clause, which will constitute a topic and thus form a composite, conditional, sentence with what follows may, but need not, be marked by <serkawngv>, <kawnqvrhnangv>, <serkawnqvrhnangv> or simply <hnangv>, all meaning 'if': e.g., <kawngvrhnangv phien / aav-tsuqc koiv> (L 139) 'If you are wrong, you must set things right' ("If be-out-of-line / have-to rectify [it]"), <hnangv mv cix longc tang mvrhawraq / hnangvrhaivrhaw kawnqv?> 'If I don't want the light, what should I say' ("If not wish use lamp this-[being]-the-case Prt / like-what say?").

A clause of reason may be introduced by the conjunction (weic) (L 303) 'because' and this will bind it to the

preceding clause: e.g., <jhiaxfmindh wuav puagv aeg / mv hiuv ag, weig ninhfbua nyei hundh-tiax dawtv dziouv mingh> "As for the maxt group, I don't know, because their kingfather died too soon> ("I move-on-go] Dem Cif Prt PC RC group top / not know NEW-SIT-ASP, because they Prt king-father subord

2.3.43222 <u>Repeated conjunctions or adverbial phrases</u> may help to hind clauses into a single sentence. e.g.

(A) the repeated conjunctions <... yaac ... y

- (i) <sou / yaac maaih, patv / yaac maaih> (L 314) There are both books and pencils/ ("[As for] books / also there-are, [as for] pencils / also there-are"), or sentence
- (ii) Knyaiv /yaac nyaiv, dzaauh / yaac dzaauh> (L 314) *To be both ashamed and sad/ ("[As for] beingashamed / be-ashamed, [as for] being-sad / besad"); or sentence
- (iii) <im / yaac mv im, swi / yaac mv suic> (L 314) 'To be neither bitter nor sour', or sentence

1

(iv) Kmeih yaac mv pwatc yia, yia yaac mv pwatc meih> ("You also not see me, I also not see you"), which last sentence may mean either of two things (see Section 2.3.4.4 below), (a) You don't see me, and I don't see you either', or (b) 'If/When you don't see me, I don't see you';

(P) the repeated adverbial phrases (yietc sih ... yietc sih ... yietc sih (etc.)> (L 311) 'First ... then ... then ...; at one time ... at another time ... at another time ...; one minute ... the next minute ... the next minute, etc.', as in (yietc sih hlaang, yietc sih aiv, yietc sih faux buanx kuO-ngwaaic, yietc sih yiem buanx kaiD-diav> (L 311) 'First high, then low, one minute above the clouds, the next minute beneath the clouds [as an airplane]'.

2.3.43223 <u>Correlative conjunctions and adverbs</u> may bind clauses into composite sentences: e.g.,

- (i) <... haiv/dau ... uav> 'Wherever ... there ...', as in <meih taic haiv/dua, yia yaac taic uav> (L 65) 'Wherever you die, I will die there too', or
- (ii) <... haix ... haix> 'Whenever/Whichever/Whatever ... there/it', as in <hnamv thaux haix, kawngv thaux haix> 'Whatever [he] thinks, he says'

("think arrive-at whatever, speak arrive-at whatever"), (L ___) or

- (iii) <yietv ... tsicuc> "As soon as ... then ...", as in <yietv haiz, tsicuc pyaux aq> (L 310) "As soon as [he] heard it, [he] left" ("As-soon-as hear, then leave"), or
- (iv) <taanD-faanh ... tsiouc ...> 'Whenever ... then
 ...', as in <taanD-faanh kawngv / mienh tsiouc
 hiuv dzengc> (L 69) 'As soon as you say anything,
 people then know all about it' ("Whenever say /
 people then know be-all"), or
- (v) (v) (dongx haix ... yaac ...> *However much ...
 nevertheless ...', as in <dongc haix yioux nylemv
 jhienv / yaac tsucc mingh> (L 360) *However much
 he dislikes it and cries, he should go' (*be-asmuch-as whichever dislike [and] weep DUR-ASP /
 nevertheless should go*), or
- (vi) <... yaac ... yaac ...> (see section immediately preceding), or
- (vii) <... kunv ... kunv ...> (L 129) 'The more ... the more ...', as in <ninh kunv jhienv kox kunv jhienv jhunh> (cf. L 129) 'The older she gets the fatter she becomes' ("She the-more DUR-RESERV ASP be-old,

the more DUR-RESERV ASP be-fat"), or

- (viii) 'The more ... the more ...', as in <vietc tsei maangc, yietc tsei plaqc hnyiouv> (L 353) 'The more you consider it, the more impact it makes on you' ("The more look-at, the more enter heart"), or

2.3.43224 Parallelism of the clauses. Of course, the correlative conjunctions and adverbs just discussed in Section 2.3.4.3.2.2.3 above constitute a form of parallelism; but there may also be parallelism of structure without such correlative function-words, in the paratactic constructions so common to Mien, e.g.,

- (i) <meih yiem tong, via yiem fai> (L 198) 'You live east [and] I live west (i.e., We live worlds apart, never to be united)?;
- (ii) (with topics/subjects omitted) <tshawngv yia gaaux meih> (L 146) `Keep provoking me and I'll whack you' ("Provoke me/l whack you");

- (iv) <mv maaih jhaa, mv maaih faangx> (L 99) 'If [you]
 have no family, you have no status'.

Note that as composite sentences, these may be conpound, made up of co-ordinate principal clauses (and so be translated according to the schema *Cl and/but Cl *), or CI functioning as topic yielding the with complex, meaning-schema (A) "If (or "When") Cl / then Cl ", or (B) "As for CI / Cl ", etc. And once again, parallelism of structure may still need the aid of prosodic features in order to bind clauses into a single sentence, since Mien abounds in gnomicisms and sayings characterized by parallelism of structure which do seem clearly to represent a set quence of sentences, not one composite sentence: e.g., (with numbers inserted to mark where the parallelism begins): <(1) vietc nawm tshugv / tshiepc tiuh miuh. jhapv taaih / nyanc raiv dzengc. maaic pun jhanx-paeqc-miuh. (2) yietc nawm tshuev / tsiepc tiuh gwaah. jhapv taaih / nyanc maiv dzengc. maaic pun jhanx-aav/khaa> (L 339) 1(1) One riceseed [produces] ten sprouts. When harvested there is more than can be eaten. ("... Harvest PERF-ASP eat not beexhausted "). [One] sells it to the White Meo. (2) One

rice-seed [produces] ten branches. When harvested, there is more than can be eaten. [One] sells it to the Akha.?, which has the situational meaning 'The harvest was plentiful and there is a surplus that can be sold to others'.

2.3.44 <u>Is the composite sentence compound or composite sentence compound or composite sentence compound or composite sentences</u>. <u>If complex. What are the exact relations among the parts?</u> Let us try first to give principles for distinguishing compound sentences from complex sentences.

2.3.441 Paratactic sentences: Deep structures. In may cases to be discussed below, we will have conjunctions to help us distinguish between compound sentences and complex But parataxis is also very common in Mien. Let sentences. us hark back to our example: in Section 2.3.1 (ninh πv via my minch>. We noted that the two component taaih. clauses might (a) represent a succession of two separate sentences, if there is a pause between the clauses, here written "."; but if there is no pause we have possibility (b) a single, compound, sentence with co-ordinate clauses meaning 'He is not coming and (or but) I am not going', and (c) of a single, complex sentence, meaning \lf/When he doesn't come, then I don't oc'. Since the construction is in each case paratactic, what syntactic, as opposed to semantic, reasons do we have for distinguishing cases (a), (b) The answer is a recourse to deep structure: case and (c)?

(b) is restatable with various co-ordinating conjunctions which we must presume are either present, or in come way coded, in deep structure:

- (i) <ninh my taaih, aenex-tshaux yia my mingh> 'He is not coming and I am not going', or 'He didn't come and I didn't go'.
- (ii) <ninh my taaih, yia my/paac my mingh> "He is not coming, but I am not going (either)", or "He didn't come, and I didn't go either".
- (iii) <ninh yeac mv taaih, via yaac mv minch> `Neither is he coming, nor am I going', or 'He didn't come, and so I didn't go either'.
- (iv) <ninh mv taaih, yia tshingx(-taaih) mv mingh> 'He is not coming, and so I am not going', or 'He didn't come, and so I didn't go'.
- (v) <ninh mv taaih, yia tsiouc mv mingh> 'He is not coming, and so I'm not going'.

For case (c) where the sentence is complex we must again presume that the deep structure codes the conjunctioninsertion possibilities shown below:

(i) Kninh mv taaih nawfaeq, yia yaac/yiouc mv mingh> \If/When he doesn't come, then I don't go'.

- (ii) (setkawrov (thranov) ninh mv taaih, yia yaac/yiouc mv mingh> *If he doesn't come, then I don't go'.
- (iii) Chnangy ninh my teath, yia yaac/yiouc my mingh> *If he doesn't come, then I don't go'.
- (iv) <weic ninh mv taaih aeq, yia tshingx(-taaih) mv mingh> Because he does not come, I therefore do not go'.

Irreversibility of the order of the clauses. 2.3.4411 If the two clauses in the sentence Kninh my taaih. yia my mingh> He does not come. I do not go. are reversible without any (very great) change of meaning, the chances are that they constitute a sequence of separate sentences. It is also possible, given a diminution of the dividing pause that they could constitute two co-ordinate clauses of a single compound sentence. It is most unlikely that it is a complex sentence, for then it would have by our analysis a topic-comment structure, and the reversal of the order of the clauses, without some specific overt marking of the fact, which would in fact mark it as permuted, i.e., as having undergone a right dislocation transformation, would reverse the topic-comment relations (hence the subordinatesuperordinate relations), yielding a different grammatical entity.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

 $[r_{i}]$

2.3.442 <u>Sentences with repeated conjunctions or</u> <u>adverbial_phrases</u>. Such are sentences containing the <... vaac ... yaac ...), and <vietc sih ... yietc sih ... yietc sih ... [etc.]> constructions. The clauses are co-ordinate. For examples see Section 2.27(b)(ii).

2.3.443 <u>Alternative guestions</u>: Here the structure is "Cl (fai) Cl ?"; and we interpret the two clauses as col 2 crdinate: e.g., <naiv im nyei fai kaam nyei?> *Is this bitter or sweet?' ("This be-bitter Prt sweet quest-alt Prt "). For more on guestions, see Section 2.3.5 et assert seq. below.

2.3.444 Sentences with clausal subjects/topics. As we have stated, we have not found it necessary to distinguish between subjects and topics, whether clausal or not. As we have also stated we consider the topic/comment relationship to be non-coordinate, with the topic being the subordinate. This is in terms of a kind of dependency-theory principle, whereby the comment is equivalent to a predicate or verb. which is the head of the proposition, and the topic is an with clausal argument, a dependent item. Sentences subjects/topics are thus complex. Examples of such sentences may be found at Sections 2.3.4.1.6 and 2.3.4.2.3 above. We include among such sentences, those with resultative complements (see Section 2.3.4.1.7).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

2.3.445 <u>Sentences_with_amplificatory_clauses</u>. The second clause, perhaps always with agent deleted, through the operation of Equi-NP deletion, amplifies or explains the first: e.g.,

- Kninh tshongh tshiax tshiax (111)f. Amp-CI tseangy sin tingc] (cf. L 181) 'He rocked Amp-C1 and swayed and veered this way and that, trying to regain his balance' ("He rock rock go-off-at-anangle co-off-at-an-angle [[trying] keep-Amp-Cl balanced [his] body [resulting-in] be-fixed] Amp-۳), 13

64 -

a-cold [couch a-lot] Amp-Cl Amp Amp-C1

(v) <[...] pyomv [tsoux faatv] > '[The sha-Amp-C] AmpCl man] blew, making magic/ ("blow [make-Amp-C] magic] "). Amp-C]

Although it should be observed that amplificatory clauses shade off into clauses of purpose we can still note that with an amplificatory clause, the latter is in a kind of apposition to the first -- to fine somebody, taking naper money and silver, to have a cold, coughing a lot, to sway and stagger, recaining one's balance, to blow, making magic, etc. An example of a clause which is transitional between an amplificatory clause and a purpose clause is Kninh heuc wuanc doh suix> (cf. L 223) 'He called back [the person's] soul, tying it [inside] the body with thread' ("He call soul tie thread"). I have translated it here as if it were amplificatory, but basically the action or state referred to in an amplificatory clause has to be simultaneous with that of the principal clause (although this is a matter of decree. and of a point of view that can be changed), while the action or state of the purpose clause is basically (a) subsequent to, and (b) the intended consequences of, that of the principal clause.

2.3.4451 <u>Sentences_with_clausal_complements_after</u> <u>verbs_of_emotion</u>. So far the sentences containing amplifi-

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

catory clauses that we have dealt with have had a common subject in each clause which has been deleted from the second clause by the operation of Equi. But sentences occur in which the principle clause predicates an emotion and the second clause, which is in paratactic constituency with it, states the occasion of the emotion: e.g. (yie chiex jhiez haid, ninh kawnov maid pun yie) 'I was very emory that he said that to me' ("I temper rise a-lot, he say that give me").

2.3.4452 <u>Sentences_containing_the_word_{pingx}_tp</u> <u>hide:___to_act_surreptitiously/__combined_into_the_structure</u> <u>"<pingx> + VP"_meaning_to_VP_surreptitiously/.</u> These are an areal feature, and we interpret both the <pingx> and the VP as clausal (the VP having lost its subject through Equi-NP_Deletion), and the V as an amplificatory clause: "to act surreptitiously, VP-ing'. Examples are

Sentences containing the structure "YP + 2.3.4453 Kaa0-dzyzauc>" 'to play'. with the meaning 'to VP without serious intent^{*}. Such sentences are an areal feature, and we suggest here that in Mien, at least, the word Kaa3dzyaauc> is here a reduced clause, and its (surface) structure is obviously paratactic with the preceding clause, and the meaning is transitional between an amplificatory clause -- "to VP, playing", and a purpose clause -- "to VP in order aah-dzyaauc] to play'. E.g., Kninh kawngv [Amp-C1 Amp-Cl (cf. L 6) 'He rolled around playfully; he tossed without aah-dzyaauc] > (cf. sleeping', Kninh kawngv L Amp-C1 Amp-C1 L 130) 'He spoke in jest; he said it for fun'.

2.3.446 <u>Sentences with purpose clauses</u>. This section is to be read in the light of the comparison and contrast of purpose clauses and amplificatory clauses made in <u>Sec</u> <u>tion 2.3.4.4.5</u> above. In sentences with purpose clauses, as with various other types of sentence we have been discussing parataxis reigns supreme: some examples, of which the first two are proverbial expressions.

(i) (puev hlauv-piage tsige hlauv-toke> (L 335) 'To burn the thin bamboo in order to scorch the yellow bamboe' ("burn thin-bamboo Lin order] scorch the <u>toke-bamboo</u> (a yellow type of bamboo)"), the situational meaning being 'to vent one's wrath on an

interior person in order to get at his superior*, and

- (iii) <jioux tuqv tsing kemh, maiv dzaauh-heix tsaanghtouz puav> (L 337) 'To preserve the forest in order not to be worried [about having enough] firewood to burn' ("preserve [resulting-in] beinginviolate the forest, [in order] not be-worried [about] firewood burn"), the situational meaning being 'Help others and you will never lack people to help you in time of need',
- (iv) <ninh pungx touz tsaax meih> (L 162) *He is showing ancer in order to test you* (*He emit fire (i.e., to display anger) [in order] test you*). Possibly another example of a sentence with a purpose clause, although it is open to other interpretations[15] is <ninh an dia jua bong> (cf.

^[15] It could, for instance, be a resultative sentence ("She put in the yeast resulting in the bread rising"). With parataxis, cr, as we are more likely to call it when the clauses are reduced, "verbserialization" or "VP-serialization", many ambiguities remain to be cleared up by the context, but in practice it seems that they almost always are.

L 113) "She put in yeast in order to make the bread rise" ("She put medicine bread rise").

2.3.4461 <u>Purpose clauses after the verbs of motion</u> <u>Staaih2 'to come', and Sminch2 'to go'.</u> These are extremely common: e.g.,

- (i) <ninh aa0-loc faux ku0-nguiaaic lungh mingh dzyaauc tshaux nyutc-taixfhungh> *She always went up to the sky in order to visit the Sun Godf (*She always ascend up-into sky [in order] visit be-with Sun-God*),
- (ii) (yia taaih thengx meih-bua tsoux kong> 'I have come in order to work for/with you' ("I come [in order] do-with/do-on-behalf-of you do work"), (yia taaih thov dia nyanc> 'I have come to ask for medicine' ("I come [in order] request medicine eat").

They are, of course, reduced clauses: they never have a subject/topic of their own (if only because of the operation of Equi); and they are embedded: any final Prts apply to the principal (i.e., matrix) clause: e.g., in (yia taaih thov dia nyanc ad> "I have [now] come to ask for medicine", the new-situation aspect particle (ad> applies to the verb (taaih) 'to come' not the verb (nyanc> 'to eat'.

2.3.4462 Sentences with clauses of reason.

2.3.447 <u>Sentences with guoted clauses as clausal obt</u> jects: These are clausal complements of verbs of saying, asking and thinking, e.g., (1) <ninhfnyei maa kawngv: a-aav, tawn-jhweiv vaac tsyangh-hawngh> 'Their mother said, "Hell, you are good children". ("Their mother say / a-a-av, offspring indeed be-righteous"). (2) <nawh ninhfnyei tawn ... naicfkaax / maa, meih kengh oix nyanc baa-ong tsomz nyae?> 'So her son asked, "Mother, do you really want to eat the Thunder-God pickled"? ("So her son ... ask / 'mother, you really want eat Thunder pickle Prt ??").

He might be tempted to included clauses of perception. The reason for this is that clauses after verbs of saying and asking, and presumably by extension, of thinking, are actually gucted forms, as evidenced by the fact that they can be followed by the guotative particles, <kaqcfni> (L 121), after cuoted statements, and <nawD-ni> (L 261) after quoted questions: e.g., Kninh kawngv oix nongc pyei baatv kagc/ni> (L 121) 'Pe said he wants four baht -- he said> ("He say want possess four baht Prt *}, and <khuv quot nyei fai nawD-ni?> (L 261) **Does it taste good?*, he asked/ Prt "). For clauses of ("taste-good Part Prt assert quest quot perception here, e.g., Kmaiv haiz minh tau yia> (L 266) *T didn't hear him reply to me' ("Not hear he/him answer me"),

but such sentences are better treated as <u>pivotal construct</u> <u>tion</u>, which themselves are another kind of complex sentence (see the next section.)

2.3.448 Eost-pivotal clauses as objects: the pivotal <u>construction</u>. A pivotal construction is a surface structure phenomenon. It consists of two overlapped clauses where the object of the first clause is the subject of the second, and they are identical in form, and that form occurs only once, i.e., is a pivot[16] between clauses: e.g.,

pun

{yia heuc ninh mingh>
pwatc
let/cause go/to go

*I tell him to go ' see co(ing)

in which the pivotal word is, of course, <ninh> he/him'. Note that in the English translations the corresponding

[16] "Pivot" is being used here in the sense of Chao (1968:124), and not that of Foky and Van Valin (1984) and others.

word, 'him', is not quite so pivot-like, since it is clearly objectival in surface-case form and is thus embedded in the first clause, and further that <u>complementizers</u> may be present in the post-pivotal clause: -- the infinitive with to, the participal -<u>ing</u>- form of the verb. But, however that may be, in both English and Mien the second clause is an object of the first, thus subordinate to it, thus making the overall sentence complex. A somewhat more elaborate example of the pivotal construction is (yia maiv buado mv laanh mienh kunv yia) (cf. L 54) 'I cannot submit to this person's control' ("I not submit Ito] this person control me").

2.3.449 <u>Sentences containing a relative clause (RCI:</u> A relative clause is a modifier standing in constituency with a neur phrase, the whole construction itself being a noun phrase, and thus part of a clause (unless it stands alone as a fragment). Since the RC is dominated by a clause node, even if not immediately, it serves to make the dominating clause, and any sentence containing the dominating clause complex (for PC's incorporated into nominal compounds, i.e., dominated by a N, and modifying the head noun of that compound, see <u>Section 2.3.4.4.9.3</u> below).

2.3.4491 <u>Structural varieties of relative clauses</u> (In this section we enclose the relative clauses in unlabelled

square brackets and underline the head noun.)

(a) The simplest kind of relative clause is a VP to the right of the head NP: e.g., (naiv <u>nawac</u> [daix]> 'This is a hird that is flying' ("This / [is] bird [fly]") (naic <u>saeng/fawng/nawmh</u> [uix fei-kaeng]> (cf. L 212) 'Those are mulberry leaves for feeding "silkworms" ("Those / [are] <u>culberry-leaves</u> [feed silkworms]"). If the head NP is the cbject of the verb, we call the structure a "pseudo-pivotal construction": see <u>Section 2.3.4.4.9.2.</u>

(b) Another kind of RC is to the left of the head NP and is connected to the head by the particle (nyei>: a.g., (naiv itsou nyanc nye] <u>nawcc</u>> "This is the bird you boil before you eat it? ("This [is] boil eat Prt <u>bird</u>"), or (yia [nabua kenv taaih nye] <u>mient</u>> "I am the person they chose? ("I [an] [they choose Aspect Prt] <u>person</u>").

(d) Another kind places the RC to the right of the head NP and terminates it with the Demonstrative (uav) 'that; there? whose function seems to be resumptive:[17] (uav nawn

[17] In Thai the pronoun <u>nan</u> plays a similar resumptive role: e.g., <u>naalikaa thii phom paw pay k_ pap</u> mong [yiz tawh mingh laanh tsawc uav] meih nye mong> "The clock that I took to the shop to be repaired is yours" ("That Clf clock I take go shop repair that [is] your clock").

2.3.4492 <u>One kind of reduced relative clause: the</u> <u>escudo-pivotal construction</u>. In the pivotal construction, the pivotal NP is the <u>subject</u> of the second clause, in the pseudo-pivotal construction it is the <u>object</u> of it, e.g.:

lawz

| Sninh | maa ih | kong[tscux]> RC RC |
|--------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| | pun | |
| | is-seeking | |
| ٩He | has | work [to do] * RC RC |
| | gīves [somebody] | |

Another nice example which is more striking because the "pseudo-pivot"-NP (deam) 'a shoulder-load', is homophonous with the verb in the reduced RC is (ninh neanox jhienv tsoux "the clock I took to be repaired'. There are more examples of Thai relative clauses with resumptive nan in

Section 2.3.4.4.9.4 below.

The pseudo-pivotal construction are a kind of blend of a relative clause with a purpose clause. They are (reduced) relative clauses[18] but they clearly contain the idea of purpose: one is looking for work in order to do it, seeking food in order to eat it, and so on.[19]

2.3.4493 <u>Another kind of reduced relative clauses</u> <u>the RC incorporated into the nominal compound</u>. Incorporated reduced relative clauses may occur either to the left or <u>to</u> the right of the head noun, under circumstances which recuire further investigation. For examples, see <u>Sec</u> <u>tions 3.3.4.3.3.4.1.3.3.4.2.</u>

2.3.4494 <u>Various syntactic roles of the NP³s that</u> <u>can head RC⁴s: The "Accessibility Hierarchy".</u> Keenan and Comrie (1862) discuss in implicational hierarchy of NP ac-

^[18] At last <u>semantically</u>: we shall not attempt here to establish the deep structure and transformational rules needed in order to derive them.

^[19] In Latin one can nicely combine the relativity and the purposiveness of clause by combining the relative pronoun with the subjunctive mood: e.g., <u>Dpus quod</u> <u>faciat petit</u> 'He is asking for work to do'.

cessibility to RC-formation in various languages. The present the following hierarchy of such accessibility (it is known as the Accessibility Hierarchy):

subject > direct object > indirect object
> object of a preposition > genitive
> object of a comparative particle

1 am indebted to David Solnit for most of the following examples (which I have taken, by permission, modified from Solnit n.d.) demonstrating RC*s with heads of descending rank in the Hierarchy (RC enclosed in square brackets, head MP underlines; I have respelled his examples and modified some of them slightly):

(1) <u>head of RC = subject</u>

.

<[yia tooc jhienv] my ruany sou longx haic> [I read
PRDG-ASP this Clf book be-good very]

'This book that I'm reading is very good' ("This [I'm reading it] book is very good")

Cf. Thai <u>nas_ thi phom kamlang _aan nii dii maak</u> Nid. ..

(2) <u>head of PC = object</u>

<yia bawqv [ninh tsawqv mvfnyei nyaanh] wuay tah mienh>
ii hit he take I-POSS money that Clf person]

I hit the person who took my money (*I hit the [he took my money] person*)

Cf. Thai phom til khon thil aw n kh_y phon pay (id.)'.

(3) <u>head of PC = outer locative</u>

<[yia yiem tooc sou] wuzy nawm pyauy hio haic> I be-at
read book that Cif house be-big very

NThe house that I study in is very big' ("The [1-bethere-study] house is very big")

Cf. Thai, which prefers to turn this <u>h_-rian kh__</u> phom yay maak, 'My study room is very big'.

(4) <u>head_of_RC_=_inner_locative</u>

<Iyia an nyaanh] wuay nawm kapy faix haic> I put money
that Clf box be-small very

'The box that I put the money in is very small' ("The [] put money [in it]] is very small")

(5) head of RC = instrumental

<tawh [yia (longe) katv awv] wuav tsung dzuge> Bring I
use cut meat that Clf knife

'Bring me the knife I used to cut the meat' ("Bring the [] (used it) cut meat] knife to me")

Cf. Thai miit thil phom (chay) tat nua maa hay phom (id.)'.

(6) <u>head of RC = pivot of pivotal construction</u>

<[yia paange Ø tsuav yia] wuav tauh mienh tone miefaq>
I depend-on (him) wait me that CIf person late NEW-SIT
IRREV ASP

("8" marks the spot from which the pivot has been deleted.)

The person that 1 depend on to wait for me is late
("The [I depend-on him to wait-for-me] person be-late
now")

Cf. Thai <u>khon this phom kh y maa rap phom saay sia</u> <u>1 w</u> 'The person that I'm waiting for to come and pick me up is late.'

(7) <u>head of RC = possessive</u>

<[yia bawqv ninh/nyei aa0-dzyaauc/toic] wuay tauh mienh> I hit he-POSS play-companion that Clr person go NEW-SIT-IRREV

"The person whose friend I hit left" ("The [I hit his friend] person left")

(8) <u>head of RC = object of a comparative particle</u>

<[yia kauh hlaanq@] wuav tauh mienh mingh micfad> I
more tall [than him] that Clf person go NEW-SIT-IRREVASP

"The person that I'm taller than left' ("The [I'm taller than him] person left")

Cf. Thai <u>khon thii phom suu kwaa khaw caak pay l_w</u> '(id.)'. (9) head_of_RC = object_of_V , of_serial_verb_construction
2
(goal_of_V_cf_motion_in_"V_of_motion_+_purpose_clause"
construction

Kiyia minoh maaiz lail wuav nawm he yiem ko nyei> 1 oo buy vegetahle that Clf market be-at be-far

The market I go to to buy groceries is far away AS-SERT ("The [I go [there] to-buy vegetables] market is far away")

Cf. Thai taleat Shii phom pay suu phak nan (man) klay maak '(id.)'.

(10) head_of_RC_=_object_of_V, of_serial_verb_construction
 direct_object_of_V_of_purpose_clause_in_"motion_verb_+
 purpose_clause_construction"

<[yia mingh he maaiz] wuay tsung dzucc lengx haic> I go buy market buy that Clf knife good very

The knife I went to the market to buy is very good*
("The [I do to-market to-buy] knife is very good")

Cf. Thai (?)miit thii phom pay talaat suu nan (man) dii maak.[20] `(id.)'.

^[20] This Thai sentence which is analogous to the Mien is questionable at best. Thais would want to turn it in some way, probably to prevent anything from intervening between the V of motion and the purpose VP:

(11) head_of_RC_=_subject_of_protasis_of_sentence_with_result tative_complement[21]

"He is the teacher who {teaches/can teach} me so that 1 understand' ("He is the [teach me be-able [tosc. result in me] understanding] <u>teacher</u>")

thus, milt this phom pay sup this talaat (man) (man) dis maak. The knife that I went to buy at the market is very good, but this does not alter the fact that Thai, like Mien, is relativizing onto the object of a "V1 V2" series.

[21] The normal practice in this dissertation where translating Mien forms is to use square brackets to enclose material not present in the original, but which needs to be mentally supplied to render the sense of the original. Since, however, in the present section we have used square brackets to enclose relative clauses, we have specially labelled with "sc." those square brackets which are being used in their normal function, namely, to enclose words which have to be mentally supplied. 1(id.)'.

Cf. Thei khaw pen khruu thii s_n phon day khaw-cay '(id.)'.

(12) head_of_RC = object_of_protasis_of_sectence_with_resul tative_complement

<ninh [yia jhaaux (ninh) tuqv [piaqc Res-Comp hnyiouv]] <u>uav tauh finD-saenah</u>> he I teach him Res-Comp be-able enter heart that Clf student

"Re is the student who understands when I teach him" ("He is the [I teach (him) be-able [to-result in Sc. him] understanding] <u>student</u>") sc. Cf. Thai <u>khaw pen nak-rian thii phom s_n day khaw-cay</u>

2.3.5 <u>Structure of guestions</u>. We have identified three kinds of questions: (1) "yes/no"-questions, (2) alternative cuestions: and (3) "wh"-word questions.

2.3.51 <u>"Yes/no" guestions.</u> This type of question in Hmong and some other mainland Southeast Asian languages (not including Austronesian) as well as in Chinese was discussed in a recent paper by Clark (1985) who set up a typology, whose categories we will mention when they are represented in Mien. We will start from the simple sentence (longx nyei> '(Something/-body) is good." Chapter 11

- Pattern (1): The statement with a "yes/no"-question intonation[22] on the last word (long nyei?) 'Is it good?'.
- Pattern (2): The statement with final question particle (sea) and "yes/no"-question intonation on (sea): (longx nvei []]sea?) 'Is it good?'.
- Pattern (3): The statement with alternate question particle <fai>, with a high level or high rising intenation on <fai>: <longx nyei []]faiv?> *Is it good?*.
- Pattern (4): The statement followed by the negative particle <mv> plus a repetition of the verb (the intonation of the final verb requires further study): <longx mv longx> 'Is it good?'. This is a pattern which occurs in Hmong, Mandarin (where it is the predominant pattern) and some Tibeto-Burman (Clark 1985:62). In Mien this pattern and the following one are not

^[22] As we stated in the Phonology section, Mien has different intonations which interact in individual ways with each lexical tone. Purnell 1968:31-34 has quite a detailed discussion of intonation, but since I could not exactly replicate his results. nor get quite consistent material from my informants, I have left a full treatment of the intonation of questions, and intonation in general, as a task for the future. I have from place to place simply indicated in phonetic brackets the pitch patterns recorded for those particular forms.

very polite. In pattern (4) if the verb has an object this comes before the negative particle: thus for 'Did he eat?' we have <nyanc hnaangx mv nyanc?> ("Eat rice not eat?") not \$<nyanc mv nyanc hnaangx> ("Eat not eat rice?").

- Pattern (5): The statement followed by the alternative question particle <fai> plus the negative particle <mv> plus a repetition of the verb (the intonation of the final verb acain requires further study): <longx nyei fai mv longx>. This pattern occurs in Mandarin, Thai, Lao, Vietnamese, Khmer, Hmong (where it is the predominant pattern) and some Tibeto-Burman languages (Clark op. cit.).
 - Pattern (6): The statement, followed by (tseiz nyei?) (yes/no question intonation on (nyei), functioning as a tad: (longx, tseiz nyei?) 'It's right, isn't it?'. This corresponds to a Thai question ending in <u>chay_mays</u>
 - Pattern (7): This is not a plain "yes/no"-question, but a "meta-question", "You mean good?", "Are you talking about the subject of being good?": from the statement <longx nyei> the assertive

particle (nyei) is omitted, and an intonation, which needs further investigation but always seems to involve some kind of rise, is used on the last word of the remainder: this (longx?). This pattern occurs in Mandarin. The closed semantic analogue in Thai is the statement followed by alternative question particle <u>row</u>.

2.3.52 <u>Alternative questions</u>. In fact patterns (3)-(5) of Section 2.3.5.1 are alternative questions, when the alternatives are "to VP" or "not to VP" where the VP's are identical. Pattern (4) of Section 2.3.5.1 omitted the alternative-question particle <fai> but we only found this particle to be omissible in exactly that pattern, i.e., when the negative of the VP is being offered as the alternative. There are some other patterns:

Pattern (1): "Topic Comment (fai) Comment " (with the in-1 2 tonation bearing on the last word of Comment 2 and needing further investigation). e.g., (naiv e fai []] bi> 'Is this A or B?'. This is actually the same pattern as Pattern (5) of Section 2.3.5.1 but it is functionally a genuine alternative question, rather than a rude or bullying way of asking a "yes/no"-

question.

- Pattern (2): This is a pattern (1) with the particle (aeq) (of uncertain function here) added after the first alternative, and optionally added after the second alternative (the intonation of the last word of the second alternative again needing further study). Examples:
- (i) omitting (aeq) after the second alternative (naiv jhuv fai aeq []]maaz?> 'Is this a dog or a horse' (the lexical tone of (maaz> 'horse', <-z> is a low risingfalling).
- (ii) with (aeq) after both alternatives: (haiv im nyei fai aeq kaam nyei []] ae> 'Is this bitter or sweet' (presumably the dropping of the glottal stop of the final (aeq) and the assumption by this particle of a mid falling pitch about the same as the lexical lower-mid falling tone, (-h), are matters of intonation).

2.3.53 <u>"Wh"-cuestions: the correlation between "wh"</u> <u>cuestion words, indefinite pronouns and indefinite relative</u> <u>pronouns.</u> "Wh"-cuestions are question containing interrogative words equivalent to English (a) '<u>who</u>?', (b) '<u>what</u>?', (c) '<u>when</u>?', (d) '<u>where</u>?', (e) '<u>why</u>?', and (f) '<u>how</u>?'. Hien shares the areal feature that its "wh-" words do triple duty: (1) as interrogative words in "wh"-word questions, (2) as indefinite pronouns meaning, correspondingly; (a) 'anybody', (b) 'anything', (c) 'at any time' (d) 'in any place', (e) for any reason', and (f) in any way', and (3) as indefinite relative pronouns meaning, correspondingly, (a) *whoever', (b) whichever', (c) whenever', (d) wherever', (e) for whatever reason', and (f) in whatever way'.[23] The forms involve either the bound form chaivf> or the free form <haix>. The form of broadest use is <haiv#> followed by the classifier (see Section 3.4.2) appropriate to its referent: <haîvfnyungc>, is <haiv/tauh), 'what?' is thus *#ho?/ is (haiv-tsanc) referring to future time and when?/ <tsyangD-haix> referring to past time; `where?' is <haivf</pre> dau> or <haix>, 'why?' is <weic haiv-tiuc> ("because of what reason?"), <weic haix>, or <tsoux haiv-nyunac> ("to-do >how?' is <hnanov haivfnaw>, {"like what-way?"}; what?");

^[23] The use of interrogatives, usually supplemented by particles in positive sentences at any rate, in an indefinite meaning is an areal feature, reaching in Asia as far as Japanese: e.g., in Thai <u>khray</u> + <u>k_</u>, Lahu a-su + ka_, Mandarin shei + dou or shei + ve, Japanese darc + mo (I am indebted to J.A. Matisoff p.c. for the Lahu, Mandarin and Japanese examples). The full picture includes functioning as indefinite relative pronouns, and, indeed, interrogatives used as indefinite pronouns, and indefinite relative pronouns crop up in Indo-European as well: e.g., French guoi gu'il en soit 'However it may be', colloquial German ich will was Sometimes in Indoessen 'I want to eat something'. European languages the indefinitizing particle is free, as auch in German was es auch sein mag 'Whatever it might be', sometimes it is bound, as are -ever in Enclish, -cumque in Latin.

Thew Adj?' is (donge haix Adj) ("to what extent pe-Adj?"). There is even an emphatic form (feiD-nyunge) meaning "what/why/how on earth?'. Each of these forms can in the appropriate construction take on its corresponding indefinite or indefinite relative meaning. The simplest construction is that of the "wh"-question pattern, which simply involves the substitution of the question-word in the same place as the corresponding noun or adverb would stand, and using at the same time a special "wh"-question intonation on the last word of the question. The "wh"-words may be reduplicated to give a plural meaning. Examples:

- (i) <u>Question</u>: (minch haiv/[]]dau> 'Where did you go?'
- (ii) <u>Question</u>: <mingh haivfdaufhaivf []] dau> 'What places did you go?'
- (iii) Indefinite: <mv tuqv mingh haiv/dau> `I didn't go anywhere'.
- (iv) <u>Question</u>: <maaic haiv≠yungc≠haiv≠nyungc kaqv-[]naiv?> What things did you buy?*
- (v) <u>Question</u>: <sipv haiv/tauh []]mienv?> `What spirit did [you] appease?'
- (vi) <u>Indefinite relative</u>: <haiv/tauh mienv yaac khoi sip nyei> (L 141) Whatever spirits there were we

-...

began to appease them."

- (vii) <u>Guestion</u>: <hmwanev mv dzyaauc tsoux haivf
 []]nyungc?> (L 302) `What's the hurry that you
 can't visit a while?' ("Be-in-a-hurry [and] not
 visit do what?")
- (viii) <u>Question</u>: <feiD-nyungc tsoux?> (L 197) *What on earth can be done about it?! (*What-on-earth do?*)
- (x) <u>Question</u>: <eix longe haiv-[]]nyunge?> *What do you want?'
- (xii) <u>Question</u>: (dongc haix hlaang?) 'How high is it?'
 ("Be as-much-as where be-tall?")
- (xiii) Indefinite: <meiv dongc haix hlaangx> 'It's not especially tall' ("Not be-as-much-as anywhere tall").

2.4. <u>The word: parts of speech</u>. A sentence is a free form of a certain level, while the lowest level of free forms are what we call <u>words</u>. Words in Mien can be <u>simple</u> or <u>compound</u> (see Section 3.3 for compound nouns and Section 4.5.5 for compound verbs). It is traditional and helpful in grammar to divide them into parts of speech or "formclasses," and we have found it convenient in analyzing Mien to set up the following parts of speech.

(1) <u>Numerals</u> (Num). These are defined by listing, and can be found listed and analyzed at Section 3.4.1. They include the numbers 1-9, multiplicative and additive constructions involving these, and also include by virtue of syntactic and semantic analogy, the Mien words for 'many', 'several', 'how many', 'a single; only one', and 'half'.

(2) <u>Classifiers</u> (Clf). These might also be called "numerary adjuncts". They occur only and always after, and in constituency with, numerals, except that the numeral 'one' may be omitted, to make up quantity-expressions (0) (see Section 3.4.2, and Section 3.11).

(3) Nouns (N). Autonomous nouns (N) are those words a which may occur all by themselves after and in consistency with a quantity-expression (Num + Clf). There are also non-autonomous, or 'limited' nouns of various types, which when combined with other nominal morphemes of appropriate

type, form 'second-order autonomous nouns' which may then occur in the frame "Num + Clf --". The quantity-expression itself may be reparded as a 'second-order autonomous noun'.

(4) <u>Verbs</u> (V). Verbs are words which must be precedable by the negative adverb (maiv> ~ (mv>, i.e., they must be negatable.

(5) <u>Adverbs</u> (Adv). Words stand next to and modify verbs.

(6) <u>Conjunctions</u> (Conj). Words that occur first in their clause or else immediately before the VP, but in any case they stand in constituency with the clause as a whole, except that scmetimes as a result of conjunction reduction they may in surface structure stand in constituency with co-ordinate NP's or VP's.

(7) <u>Particles</u> (Prt). These are words, usually small in phonological bulk, that do not fit any other of the partof-speech categories. They follow the item with which they stand in constituency. Sentence particles (Prt) follow sentences; topic particles (Prt) follow topics; nountop phrase particles (Prt) follow noun phrases; and verb-NP phrase particles (Prt) follow verb phrases.

(8) Interjections (Intj). These are exclamations that do not fall under the other part of speech categories, or

constructions of these. They may constitute utterances in themselves, or intrude into utterances. They are marked by special features of vowel-length, intonation and voicequality.

2.4.1 <u>Morphology of the parts of speech.</u> Mien is an uninflected language, and the morphology of the parts of speech, such as it is, is restricted to the noun and the verb, and will be dealt with in Chapters III and IV. We should note however that there are in Mien sporadic apparent remains of a certain amount of derivational morphology. These will be discussed in the following section.

2.4.11 <u>Apparent fossil remains of derivational more</u> <u>chology: allofams</u>. The word "allofams" was coined by Matisoff to refer to sets of words that make up so-called "wordfamilies", i.e., they bear to each other a family resenblance in terms of form and function without the existence of that degree of regularity which allows words in other languages to be arranged in paradigms and divided, more or less cleanly, into roots of clear meaning and derivational or inflexional morphemes of clear meaning.

Allofams look like the debris from the long-past breakdown of such a clear system. Co-allofams often belong to different parts of speech. The picture is complicated in Mien by the fact that so much of the vocabulary is borrowed

from various strata of Chinese, so that candidates for coallofamy may reflect (a) a morphological situation of the older Mien of pre-Chinese contact times, or (b) a Chinese word-family borrowed into Mien holus-bolus, or (c) etymological doublets -- different Chinese donor dialects giving one and the same word at different times with possible semantic specialization. Let us discuss this last case first.

2.4.111 Mien doublets from one and the same Chinese word. A case of this is provided, for instance, by the variants <khawvflienh> (L 140) and <khawvflinh> (L 355) both meaning 'to pity, feel sorry for' (< Ch. (AD #414, #556.8)) of which the first is the popular torm, and shows tonesandhi, while the second is the song-language form, which fact in itself, along with the vocalism of the second syllable, indicates that it is a pre-modern loan; another example is (san) 'three', (< Ch. (AD #766)), of restricted usage, as in <lauv san>, a name for a third son, whose initial and final indicate a modern loan (< S.W. Mandarin), and (faam) 'three' used in various connections including CmDfaam> the name often given to a third daughter (for more 00 this pair of doublets, see Section 3.4.1.3.2.5), the initial and final of <faam> indicating a pre-modern loan.

Yet another example is provided by the Chinese (AD #112), which has yielded (uic) (L 9), whose form marks

it as a pre-modern loan, and <hweix> (L 300>, whose tone, if nothing else, marks it as a modern loan: both forms mean 'to meet' (see further on these forms at Section 2.4.2.1 below). In some cases Mien has seemingly imposed its own allofany on a Chinese etvmon borrowed only once -- e.g., Chinese (AD #609.1) has as its regular[24] correspondent in Mien <khoi> (L 141) a transitive verb meaning 'to open', but alongside this there exists <goi> (L 148) 'to open; to opened; be away, be separated' which can even form a resultative complement construction with its doublet, thus <khoi mv goi> 'cannot get it open' ("opening [it] doesn't [result-in-its-] being-open") (see Downer 1973:15-16), as if one could say (AD #609.11, # 37, # 609.11) in Chinese.

Voicing in initial stops goes back to earlier *prenasalization, and that must have been still a productive process at the time when (AD #609.11) was borrowed. The loss of the *aspiration in the *aspirated stop and its merger with the *plain voiceless stop is regular (see Downer 1973:9-10), and the same opposition is to be found in the pair <thutv> (L 182) 'to take off; to remove; to separate from; to recover from' (< Ch. (AD #1138.1)) and <dutv>

^[24] It should be understood that "regular" is a somewhat provisional term here, since borrowing from different Chinese dialects has produced a complicated picture of sound-correspondence that has not yet been fully worked out. (See Downer 1973).

(L 91) 'to come off, come away, be separated from', which is precisely parallel to <khoi/goi> and can form resultative complement constructions: e.g., <thutv mv dutv> `cannot be removed'. So far we have dealt with two cases of *prenasalization added to an *aspirated initial to yield intransitive verbs or adjectives.

Now let us take a case where *prenasalization* has precisely the opposite semantic effect: from the adjective (paengh> (L 19) 'to be level' (AD #743) (with *prenasalization* has yielded (baengh> (L 48) 'to make level, smooth; to be equal in level to'. Slightly different is the case of (tonch> (L 72) 'to be alike, to be the same as', a regular reflex of Chinese (AD #1150), with a *proiced* initial and *prenasalization* and *prenasalization* to be the same to both prenasalization and *prenasalization* (L 91) 'to be the same as, to be as much as'.

It is hard to say whether it is different dialects-oforigin or post-borrowing allofamy that accounts for the doubletization of Chinese (AD #1015.5) into (tauh) (L 65), Clf for people, animals and doors, and (taauh) (L 68) 'first, foremost, source, beginning', and of Chinese (AD #1194) into the regular (tsien) (L 151) 'to be true, genuine' and (tshien) (L 173, =aspiration ((?)) '(idem); to be kin to'.

2.4.112 <u>Non-doubletic allofams</u>. Without going into the cuestion of whether they are Chinese loans or not, we offer the following examples of possible allofams:

- (i) <ywang> (L 316) %to revitalize' and <ywangh> (L 316) %to be vigorous, virile, fertile' (which reflect an alternation in #A-tone between #glottal-stop initial and a #voiced-semivowel initial);
- (ii) <sia> (L 208) 'to waive, overlook', and <siav>
 (L 208) 'to give up; relinquish', <siax> (L 208)
 'to forgive; bear with', all with the common semantic element of forbearance, and reflecting
 alternation between #A-, #B- and #C-tones,
- (iii) (L 30) *to lean one's back up against some-thing', thing', <pr
- (iv) <tapv> (L 66) 'to put into; insert' and <tapc>
 (L 66) 'to go into deeply, to penetrate' (reflect ing a phonological opposition of #voiceless ini tial versus #voiced initial, and a semantic oppo-

sition of transitive action versus intransitive result reminiscent of khoi/goi> and <thutv/dutv>
above);

- (v) <tsatv> (L 160) 'to press: bush down' and <tshatv> (L 178) 'to crush: stifle, repress (as anger) (reflecting a phonological opposition of #voiceless initial versus #aspirated initial, and a semantic relationship of more general to more particular action),

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

ending and a #glottal stop (presumably <***k) ending,

- (ix) <dawn> (L 92) 'to be damp; to be wet' and <dawtc>
 (L 92) 'to be soaking wet', reflecting an opposi tion between a *nasal final and a *homorganic step
 final,
- (x) (wingc> (L 303) to go around, detour around/ and (hwing> (L 300) to walk around, to encircle/, reflecting an opposition between a (*voiced semivowel initial-cum-*C-tone and an *aspiratedsemivowel initial-cum-*A-tone.

An intriguing pair is (seu> (L 211) 'to be even, straight' and (seux) (L 211) 'to be uneven, off-center', reflecting an opposition of #A-tone and #C-tone. Or consider (pienv> (L 13) 'to pass [something] off onto another; to evade one's responsibility by shunting it off onto someone else' and (phien> (L 36) 'to be out of the appropriate place, off-center'. Sometimes one of the pair is a verb while the other is a noun, e.g., (pouh> (L 20) 'to serve, wait on' and (pou> (L 20) 'a servant'; (byaac> (L 57) to walk with a stick' and (pyaav> (L 34) 'a stick', (leuh> (L 286) 'to form a gap' and (leuc> (L 286) 'a gap, opening'. Or the opposition may be between a noun, as (gwaah> (L 149) 'branches', and (gwaav> (L 149) Clf for branches.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

· . .

Chapter II

These seem to point back, as serving some derivationmorphological function in earlier times, to alternations between (i) #un-prenasalized and #prenasalized initials (<khoi/api>, <thutv/dutv>), (ii) ⇒voiceless and ≑voiced initials (<peu/pouh), <tapv/tapc>), (iii) *voiceless and *aspirated initials (<tsatv/tshatv>), (iv) homorcanic ≑nasal various (dawn/dawtc). (v) **≑tones** finals and #stop (<]euh/leuc>, <sia/siav/siax>), and (vi) combinations of alternations (<pvaav/bvaac>. **≑tonal** and \$\$\$\$\$\$ cphien/pienv>, <tonch/dongc>). Perhaps a thorough investication could reveal some recularities here.

2.4.2 <u>Overlapping parts of speech</u>. Possibly the limiting case of allofamy is multiple part-of-speech membership, where one and the same form, with no variation whatever, may belong to different parts of speech.

(a) <u>Verb/noun</u>. Usually what is involved is a word designating either an action, as a verb, or the product, instrument or locus of the action, as noun: e.g., pyawmh> (L 35) 'to perch, roost' and 'a perch, roost', (yweic> (L 316) 'to secrete gum/szp/juice' and 'gum/sap juice', <tsiem> (L 151) 'to wedge' and 'a wedge', <khapv> (L 137) 'to cover tightly; to close (as a box with a lid and a lock)' and 'basket, trunk; container (for personal belongings)', <tshongx> (L 181) 'to cross-stitch' and 'cross-

stitching (the product), (daam) (L 89) to carry on the shoulder, and 'a load carried on the shoulder.

This last word is probably an example of a widespread and probably productive process whereby, as in Chinese (Chao 1968:31? <u>et seq.</u>) a verb can beaet a "<u>cognate</u>" or "<u>inner</u>" <u>object</u> which functions as its Verb-Clf (see Section 3.4.2.1.2). Thus from <diqv> 'to kick' one can derive <diqv> 'a kick', as in <diqv> 'to kick' one can derive kicks'. If the verb is <u>transitive</u> the cognate object may be regarded as classifying or measuring the <u>object noun</u> rather than the verb, e.g., <daam i daam kaqc-naiv> "to carry-onthe-shoulder two shoulderloads [of] things", or
ohwangv
siac phwangv hmeiv> "to scoop-up-in-cupped-hands seven
double-handfuls [cf] uncooked-hulled-rice".

The end of this evolution is the emergence of a fullfledged autonomous noun, homophonous with its semantically kindred parent verb, i.e., a noun which is not limited to being a cognate object, tied to a context in which its parent verb is governing it. We have a kind of half-way house situation exemplified in the sentence <naandx jhienv tsoux daam daam> (L 259) 'to attach [things] together to make a load to carry on the shoulders' ("attach-together DUR-RES-ASP make shoulder-load carry-on-shoulders"), in which <daam> 'shoulder load' is an ordinary (i.e., "outer",

non-cognate) object of (tsoux) to make and yet it is still tlanked by its parent-verb in a pseudo-pivotal construction.[25] In other words the "pseudo-pivotal" construction could well be the stepping-stone whereby the homophonous cognate object of a verb becomes a syntactically independent, i.e., autonomous noun.

(b) <u>Verb/numeral</u>. Another case of overlapping parts of speech is provided by the verbs <tshamv> (L 153) 'to be comrlete', which as numerals, i.e., preceding a classifier, mean 'many' and 'the whole' respectively (for the latter case see first note to the table in Section 3.4.1.1 below).

2.4.21 <u>Overlapping parts of speech among Chinese loans</u> <u>words.</u> Much investigation remains to be done in the area of Chinese loanwords so let us just note briefly two situations: (1) the multiple part-of-speech membership is borrowed as such from Chinese: e.g., <uic> (L 9) 'to meet together' and 'a meeting' (Chinese (AD #112)) '(idem)';[26] (2) Mien has imposed additional part-of-speech membership on the word after borrowing it from Chinese: e.g., <jhien> (L 960) 'to rule; to exercise authority' and 'a ruler; an

[25] Cf. the anologous sentence with <u>allofamy</u>, not homophony between verb and noun: (mv maaih pou pouh ninh) (L 20) 'There is no servant to wait on him'. [26] This is a pre-modern loan; the same verb-noun overlap seems to be present in its modern-loan doublet (hweix) (L 300).

official', of which two part-of-speech meanings the Chinese original, (AD #447), seems to have only the latter.

2.4.3 <u>Homonymy</u>. To be distinguished from (co-)allofams, which show a family resemblance in meaning and form, and overlapping parts of speech or part-of-speech subcategories, which show a family resemblance of meaning and <u>identity</u> of form, we have <u>homonyms</u>, which show identity of form and no semantic relationship at all. Like most (all (?)) languages, Mien has its share of homonyms, though they are the exception, rather than as in, for instance, Mandarin, the rule: e.g.,

- (i) .(aapv) (1) (L 7) 'duck (N)' and (2) (L 7) 'to force, compel, constrain, urge strongly',
- (ii) <tangx> (1) (L 67) 'a bench with legs' and (2)
 (L 67) 'to break, snap, rip, be frayed',
- (iii) <thawngv> (1) (L 83) `soup; broth; water in which vegetables were boiled' and (2) (L 83) `to hinder, obstruct, get in the way, obviate',

(iv) (dia> (1) (L 85) 'medicine', (2) (L 85) 'cloth',

(v) <tshaa> (1) (L 179) 'a pole', (2) (L 179) 'to lack', (3) (L 179) 'to grab hold of, pounce on, assault', and (4) 'to massage' (probably an offshoot of (3).

104.

CHAPTER III

THE NOUN PHRASE

3.1. <u>The general structure of the Noun Phrase (NP)</u>. In this account of the NP we follow the principle of expository convenience and informal eclecticism rather than a strictly formal, deductive presentation. Thus a distinction is sometimes drawn between deep structure and surface structure, and sometimes not. Sometimes the account is formalized and sometimes not. For the sake of lucidity of presentation we shall begin with a simplified account of the NP, and give a more technical presentation at the end of the chapter (Section 3.11). Our simplified account is as follows:

 $NP \longrightarrow \{Det\} \land (Det)$

A NP consists of an optional Determiner Structure followed by an obligatory noun (N) -- the NP-nucleus, followed by an optional Determiner-Structure

E.g., <[naiv nawm] tshia [uav nyungc] > Det Det Det Det Det *This vehicle of that kind*

("[This Clf] vehicle { that kind] "). Det Det Det Det Det

Without more ado we shall now proceed to the heart of the NP, its nucleus.

3.2. <u>Autonomous nouns</u> A (first-order) autonomous noun (N) is a free form which may constitute a NP (nucleus) all by itself. Subtypes of autonomous nouns include (a) common nouns, (b) proper names of place, (c) proper names of person, (d) personal pronouns, (e) demonstratives and (f) interrogative/indefinite pronouns.

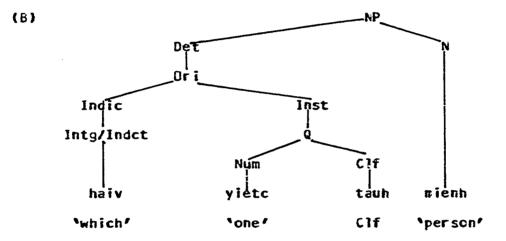
The term and concept "autonomous ncun" is taken from Matisoff 1973:Sec. 3.2. It is, as he points out, a surface structure phenomenon, but it is convenient to use it in describing Mien as well as Lahu. It is a surface structure phenomenon in several respects: (a) it cisregards the question of whether an "autonomous ncun" stands alone in the NP also in the deep structure, as is arguable with Demonstratives, or as the result of a deletion transformation; (b) interrogative "pronouns" are complex in structure and may have undergone deletion of a head-noun: e.g., <haiv/tauh> 'who' has the surface structure (A):

(A)

Int/Indef Clf haiv tauh which' Clf for human beings

NP

but it probably has the underlying structure (B) (see Figure 3(X1) in Section 3.11).



In its journey from (B) to (A) <haivftach> would have undergone <yietc>-deletion and head-noun deletion.

A limited noun (N) may not constitute a NP nucleus, lim but is nevertheless semantically noun-like. These include specific-location nouns, numerals and classifiers. Taking autonomous nouns and classifiers to be subcategories of nouns, we should note that there can be <u>overlapping between</u>

<u>subcategories of noun</u>: e.g., <chiax> (L 107) as an autonomous noun meaning 'breath, life principle; voice; air, steam, gas; manner, temper, demeanor', and as a Clf for breaths taken, and <pcuv> (L 20), as an autonomous noun meaning 'ax; hatchet' and as a Clf for strokes of an axe.

3.2.1 <u>Common_nouns</u>. As with presumably most languages, most nouns belong to this class. They may occur in the environment "Num + Clf --", i.e., as heads of quantifier expressions, and also as heads of subordinative constructions with (nyei) which is the subordinate-cum-possessive particle. (See Section 3.7). Morphologically they range from monomorphemic to higher-order compound nouns: e.g. (mienh) 'person' in (i tauh mienh) 'two people' ("two classifier person"), (pyauv) 'house' in (Fuqv-Awn nyei pyauv) 'Fou-One's house'. An example of a common noun which is a higher-order compound is (jhiem=puaz-docv=dzaeng>[1] (L 95) 'a gold ring' ("gold=hand-extremity (i.e., 'finger')=ring").

3.2.2 <u>Proper_nouns.</u> Place-names together with personal names make up the category of proper nouns in Hien. Proper nouns are distinguished from common nouns by the fact that they cannot appear as head of quantified NP's, and as head of subordinative constructions with <nyei>. They are dis-

11] For principles governing use of hyphens -- single, double, etc. see Section 3.3.1.

tinguished from pronouns in not being able to be followed by appositive NP's (or at least not in the same way: the question needs further investigation). Furthermore, if pronouns are introduced not by PS-rules, as here, but by a <u>pronomin</u> <u>nalization transformation</u>, and proper nouns are introduced by phrase structure rules, and this difference of origins has empirical import, then we have another syntactic difference.

Proper names can be divided on syntactic grounds (see Rule (9)(iii) and (iv)) and semantic grounds into proper names of person and proper names of place. Personal names share with pronouns the fact that they can be pluralized, or rather, collectivized, by the addition of a special morpheme, <bua>:[2] e.g., <kweih tszci bua> (L 53) 'Gway Dzoy's group'). The Mien personal naming system is quite intricate, involving clan names, generation names, adult given names, childhood names and nicknames. Examples of childhood names are given in Section 3.4.1.3.2.5. The personal naming system is discussed in detail in Lombard (329-333). Personal names can also be pressed into service as place-names (see next paragraph).

12] This structural feature is common to the South East Asian linguistic area, although of course the collectivizing morpheme differs from language to language: in Lahu, for instance, it is -hj (J.A. Matisoff: personal communication).

As for proper names of place, these like common nouns referring to some particular place, are normally accompanied by spatial co-deictics (see Section 3.11 PS-rules (1)(iii), (iv) or (v)--(2)(iii)--(9), and Section 3.2.5), and in fact these accompaniments have the power to turn personal names into place names (see Section 3.2.5).

3.2.3 Interrogative/indefinite_pronouns. It is convenient to treat these as a kind of noun because they can fill the subject, object and oblique spcts in the sentence: (for a more precise grammatical characterization see footnote in Section 3.2). Some examples are: <haivftauh> `who?/anyone', <haivfnawm> `what?/anything' <haivftsanc> `when?/at any time', <haivfnyunc> `what kind?/anything, any kind (tsoux#haiv-nyungc) \why?/fcr any reason'. The interrogative meaning is obtained if the sentence containing the word has a content-question intonation or is an indirect the indefinite question. Otherwise (i.e. embedded) interpretation applies. In normal speech style the constituent (haiv) is reduced to (hav). It is a bound morpheme, and carries the interrogative/indefinite part of the meaning. It is obviously an allofam of the locative adverb <haix> `where?/anywhere'.

The final syllable of each of the above forms is a classifier (see Section 3.4.2) or, in the case of <dau>, and

Chapter III

<naw>, a quasi-classifier (see Section 3.4.2.1.8). The constituent <hnangv> is a particle meaning `like'. The constituent <tsoux> is a verb meaning `to do', so that the expression translated `why?/for any reason' is -- or is historically derived from -- a clause meaning `tc dc what?/to do anything'; parallels for this are to be found in Thai, Lahu, Cantonese, etc.

In the expression for `what?/anything' the classifier varies according to what kind of referent the speaker has in mind, as do classifiers in quantitative expressions, but probably to a lesser extent than in quantitative expressions. Interrogative/indefinite nouns can be followed by other nouns, to which they are subordinate, e.g., <haivf nyungc tawngx> `what kind of place?/in any kind of place'.

3.2.4 <u>The demonstratives <naiv> 'this'. <naic> 'that</u> (<u>near addressee)'. <uav> 'yon'.</u> Demonstratives may occur as autonomous N's through the application of PS-rules of Section 3.11: these are Rules (1)(i)--(4)--(5)(i) (in this account of the phenomenon there is no N even in the deep structure, but the rules could be rewritten sc as to provide a N in all cases, which would then be deleted by a transformation): e.g., <naiv haiv/nyungc> 'What is this' ("This [is] what?") (see Figure 3(V) in Section 3.9): <naiv Jhawn nyei pyauv> 'This is John's house', <naic yia gemb

faix haic> `l don't want that -- it's tco small/ ("That I reject be-small very").

Dem's may occur adnominally in prenominal and/or postnominal position through the operation of Section 3.11 PS-Rules (1)(ii), (iii), (iv) or (v)--(2)--(3)--(5)--(6). Prenominally Dem occurs in the surface structure "Dem (+ (teix>) (+ Num + Clf) + N * (<teix> *someness* is a Grouph Clf used when N is semantically plurall: e.g., <naiv mienh> h 'this person' (Dem + N), <naiv tauh mienh> 'this person' (Dem + Clf + N), Knaiv teix mienh> "these people" (Dem + + N), (naiv teix i tauh mienh) 'these two people' Clf group + Num + Clf + N): when followed by Clf of (Dem + Clf group whatever kind <naiv> is commonly reduced to <mv> or <nv>, according to subdialect, and <naic> to <nh>, according to my informants, and Knc> according to Lombard (254).

Post-nominally Dem concludes the NP and is resumptive: e.g., (mh tauh auv-kwaav-mienh naic> `that widow' ("that Clf widow that"), where it is right next to the head-noun, or <uav nawm mong [yia tawh mingh laanh tsawc] uav> `that clock that I took to the shop to be repaired' ("that Clf clock [] take go shop repair] that") (square brackets enclose kC).

In the body of a narrative <naic> can mean either 'that (near addressee)', or 'the, the aforementioned'. Furthermore the three Demonstratives -- cr corresponding homonymous

adverbs -- have the space-deictic advertial meanings 'here', 'there (near addressee)' and 'yonger', respectively.

3.2.5 Spatial co-deictics. These follow the demonstrative Kuav>, and with it yield the following ceictic expressions: (uav jhiav) '(that) up yonder (of a place above and at some distance from the speaker)'; <uav chaav maengx> '(that) over yonder on the higher side, up the hill'; <uav maenax> (that there) on that side, on the far side'; <uav dau> 'that (place) nearby'; <uav caangc> 'ahead there (at some distance from the speaker), over there (may be out of sight)'; <uav ngaanc> 'over yonder (at a medium distance from the speaker and at about the same elevation, the object lying beyond some natural lower area, such as a river or valley, but within possible view of the speaker)'; <uav hwaav> 'over yonder (at a medium distance and about the same elevation as the speaker, but the object is unable to be seen from his location)'; <u av diav uav> "down yonder there'; Kuav diavy 'down yonder (a place lower than and at some distance from the speaker's location); Kuav diav haav maengx> 'down yonder side (where the trail goes down, levels off, and then rises slightly)'.

As an example, a Mien living approximately at sea level in Richmond, California, may speak of going to San Francisco (out of sight, across the San Francisco Bay, approximately

at sea level) in several ways, inclucing Kmingh uav hwaav Saen/Fraensisvko (uav)>, or Kmingh uav maengx Saen/ Fraensisvko (uav)>.

This system of spatial deixis seems, by comparison with other languages of the Southeast Asian area, to be (a) very highly differentiated, and (b) very much insisted upon: thus, for instance, for 'go home' one says (dzuanx uav pyauv) ("return [to] yonder house, which may be out of sight") where other languages of the linguistic area would be content with "return house".

It is also interesting to note that by being incorporated into an expression of spatial deixis personal names become locative expressions: e.g., (mingh uav hwaav Kweih Tsoih uav) "go over yonder to Gway Ezcy's place" (L 301) ("go over yonder Gway Dzoy yonder").

3.2.6 <u>The personal pronouns</u> These can be tabulated as follows:

yia 'I' yia/bua 'we' meih 'you (sg.)' meih/bua 'you (pl.)' ninh 'he/she/it' ninh/bua 'they'

When unstressed (meih/bua> becomes (mh/bua> and (ninh/bua> becomes (nah/bua> or (lah/bua>. (yia/bua> alternates in usage with simple (bua>: my informants deny, and Lombard does not mention, the distinction (yia/bua> 'we (exclusive)/ versus (bua> 'we (inclusive)/ attributed to Mien by Mao (1972:248).

3.3. <u>Compound nouns</u>. What Matisoff says under this heading about Lahu (1973:Sec. 3.3) applies almost without change to Mien:

"Lahu morphemes are one syliable long in the overwhelming majority of cases. When confronted with a polysyllabic string whose most important component seems to be a nominal morpheme, the analyst has only two likely alternatives to consider: either the string is a syntactic construction consisting of more than one word, or it is a [compound noun] ... yet some constructions are of an intermediate nature ... [for] ... 'mcrphological compounds' and 'syntactic constructions' are situated along an axis of productivity-ofcombination which is more like a continuum than a series of discrete compartments".

We consider (a) pronouns always to be separate words, (b) particles to be separate words from their head nouns, (c) numerals to be separate words from their classifiers, and (d) both particles and numerals to be separate from the head noun at their NP; (e) demonstratives and spatial co-deictics and prefixed location-nouns to be independent words, (f) possessor/subordinated NP's to be separate from the

subordinative/possessive particle <nyei>, which in turn is separate from the following possessed head NF. All other polysyllabic structures in the NP -- with the exception of the not very numerous polysyllabic morphemes, whatever their origin -- are compound nouns of one sort or another.

As with Lahu, all compound neuns are autonomous. The vast majority are binary, in the sense that they may be analyzed into two immediate constituents.

While compound nouns shade off into syntactic constructions in one direction they shade off into <u>polysyllabic DOME</u> <u>inal morphemes</u> in another. These are not very numerous but there are some quite common ones: e.g., <kaqc-naiv> 'thing' (L 121), <kuD-ngwaaz> (L 127) 'baby, child', <mD-gawngv> (L 234) 'head'. I have hyphenated them as if they were multiconstituental, following Matisoff (1973:Sec. 3.3). For further discussion regarding problematical cases in the identification of morphemes, see Section 3.3.5.2(c)

3.3.1 <u>Compound orders and hyphenization</u>. A <u>first-order</u> <u>compound</u> is one whose elements are both single morphemes: (tungz-awv> 'pig meat; pork', (pyauv-hlen> 'beside the house' ("house-environs"), (mweiz-tawngh> 'honey' ("beesugar" (tawngh> < Ch. (AD #373.4)). Such compounds are written with a single hyphen between the constituents. A <u>second-order compound</u> has a first-order compound as one or

both of its constituents: <bing=tweiv-daauv> `long-tailed monkey' ("monkey=tail-long"), <puaz-dccv=dzaeng> `fingerring' ("hand-extremity=ring"), <byauh-yaangh=tawn> `a lategrowing kind of yellow rice' ("rice-yellcw=child"), <hunghtiax≠dau-peih>[3] (L 230) `king of the earth' ("kingfather=earth-surface").

These compounds are written with a double hyphen "=" between the two major constituents, with single hyphens between the other syllables. Similarly, <u>third-order comp</u> <u>pounds</u> (i.e., those having a second-order compound as a constituent), are written with a triple hyphen "=" at the point where the first cut is to be made, and double and single hyphens where appropriate: <jhiem=puaz-doqv=dzaeng> (L 95) 'a gold ring' ("gold=finger=ring": <jhiem> < Ch. (AD #386.1)).

For each higher order we may add a hyphen at the point of primary division: thus <tom[=hiaz-tungz=gaiv=dui> `big heap of wild pig's dung' ("big_wild=pig=dung=heap", with <hiaz> < Ch. (AD #228), correspondence problematical).

1

^[3] A slash through a hyphen cr hyphen-combination does not change the logical meaning of the symbol, but is a pronunciation-marker, indicating that the syllable to the left of the hyphen is not subjected to tonesandhi (see passim).

Doubtful cases can arise: the hierarchy of constituency may be unclear, compounds may contain unique, difficult-tointerpret syllables, and so on. In these matters we have followed Matisoff's (1973:Sec. 3.3.1) principles of hyphenization; i.e., (a) use single, unhierarchized hyphens when the constituent structure is completely obscure: e.g., <tawD-nawD-nih> (L 74) 'jackfruit', except that (b) syllables may be run together in loanwords that are not easily segmented even in the donor language, e.g. <Saenf Fraensisvkc>, 'San Francisco'.

It is convenient to subdivide compcund nouns into those whose immediate constituents are themselves nominal, i.e., neun-neun compounds, and those which contain a verb as one of their constituents.

3.3.2 <u>Noun-noun compounds (N-N_cpds)</u>. These can be conveniently divided into co-ordinate and hetero-ordinate.

3.3.21 Co-ordinate_N=N_cpds.

3.3.211 <u>Appositional_N=N_cpds.</u> This is a somewhat dubious category. Some candidates are <hungh-tiax> (L 230) 'king' and <hungh-maac> (L 230) 'queen' ("[the] sovereign-[our] father" and "[the] sovereign-[cur] mother" respectively, <hungh> < Ch. (AD #1298), <tiax> < Ch. (AD #1006), tone problematical, <maac> < Ch. (AD #592), tone problematical). The problem here is that <hungh> could also perhaps be interpreted as a modifier and the second constituent as head, although the relationship is clearly not genitival.

Also perhaps belonging under this rubric is a curious kind of compound of the structure "mienh + V + mienh" (lit. "people V people") with the general meaning `V-ing kind of people': let us baptize them <u>double-mienh compounds</u> and write an example provisionally without hyphens, as follows: <mienh japv mienh> `stingy pecple' (L 111, 237), where <japv> (L 111) means `to be tight; to pinch, to bind; to grasp (in a pincer motion)'. Now both "V + N" and "N + V" noun compounds almost always show tone sandhi on the first constituent (see Section 3.3.3 et seq.), while double-mienh compounds never show TS between the V ard the final <mienh>.

Furthermore the first (mienh) could well be under TS since its underlying tone, <-h> i.e., falling, by nature This suggests a constituent shows no change under TS. structure of <mienh-japv/mienh> i.e., "tight-person=person". Let us now offer some more examples giving them this consti-<mienh-dzweic/mienh> (L 237) tuent structure: `pretty/handsome person' (<dzweic> `pretty, handsome'), <mienh-kwai≠mienh> `clever'), **`**clever person (<knai) <mienh-maaih#mienh> `wealthy person' (<maaih> `to have') which has a synonymous compound <putv-tsoih=mienh> (<putv>

"to be afflicted with; to become something out of the ordinary"; <tsoih> -- meaning uncertain; <putv tsoih> "to be rich"), <mienh-jhomc≠mienh> "poor person" (<jhomc> "poor"). For a possible explanation of the phenomenon of double-mienh compounds, see below.

3.3.212 Additive (dvandva) ccmpouncs. These occur (a) in numerals, in "augend + addend" constructions: e.g., <tsiepc-faam> `thirteen' (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2); (b) as combinations of nouns which jointly define a natural set -let us call them iointly definitive bingnes; e.g., <tiaxoptional) `parents' ("father mother" < Ch.</pre> maac> (TS (AD #1006.1, #592.7 -- tones of both morphemes for some reason shifted from $\neq A$ to $\neq C$), (kawx-yiouz) 'brothers' (L 129) ("older brother-younger brother": <kawx> (L 129) < Ch. (AD #413), with same change of tone-class as for <tiax> and <maac> above); <yiemD-yaangh> `the Yin and the Yang' ("Yin-Yang"; < Ch. (AD #274, #214.2)); <lungh-dau> `the entire cosmos; heaven and earth' ("heaven-earth"); Cnyaanhpyaangh=nyaanh+piouv> (L 271) \silver jewelry engraved with patterns of flowers and fruits ("silver-flowers=silverfruits*).

Jointly definitive binomes have the property of being separable: each part may be severally made the object of a verb, without the collectivity-meaning of the unseparated

compound being lost; e.g., <lawz kawz lawz yiouz> 'to look for one's brothers' ("look-for older-brother(s) look-for younger-brother(s)").[4] Although separable, the fact that the elements have combined to form a new and unitary entity is shown (a) by the TS which occurs in most cases, and (b) by the fact that the compound is treated as a unitary head in quantificational expressions: e.g., cpyei jhieqv puaztsaux> 'the four (human) extremities; four hands and feet' ("four Clf hand-foot").

Sometimes the constituents are polar: if we refer to the constituents as A and B we can define the meaning as 'both A and B' or 'A, B and everything in between'; e.g., <dawm-muanz> (L 92) 'day and night; from morning till night' ("morning-night"). Another way in whict additive compounds can be separated is by several reduplication of the constituents; e.g., <fun-faqv> 'descendants; grandchildren and great-grandchildren' ("grandchildren-great grandchildren") --> <tun-fun#faqv-faqv> 'ail descendants'.

^[4] The process of separation is simply the general process of which a special case has been referred to by the term "ionization of compounds", a term whose use in linguistics is of uncertain origin, but was fixed by Y.R. Chao (see for instance Chao 1968:159 et seq.) and was followed by Matisoff (see, for instance, Matisoff 1973:Secs. 3.39, 4.46). The result of the process is an "elaborate expression", in this case a verbal one; see Matisoff 1973:index of topics. Elaborate expressions in Mien stand in need of further investigation.

Regarding TS in additive compounds, see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1 for the numerals. With unreduplicated binary forms, the leftmost constituent normally undergoes TS. Where separate reduplication occurs, there is normally TS immediately to the left of "-", but not of "=".

3.3.22 Hetero-ordinate N + N compounds. These are more common than co-ordinate N + N compounds, and semantically one noun -- let us call it the specifier noun (N) -- modisp fies the other -- let us call it the head noun (N). The h direction of modification is not uniform in nominal compounds, whether the modifier be a noun or a verb (for the latter see Section 3.3.3). The first constituent normally undergoes TS whatever the direction of modification. The prevalent direction is "N -N ". It is convenient to dissp h cuss the smaller category, "N -N " compounds, first. h sp

3.3.221 <u>N -N _compounds</u>. Since these are a minority <u>b sp</u> we can discern some kind of semantic grouping here, viz., animate things -- various natural species and aspects thereof: traditionally known non-Mien ethnic groups, kinds of birds, fishes, snakes and worms, insects, trees and plants, bones, natural fluids: e.g., <jhanx=law/hec> (L 98) 'the Lahu people', <jhanx=aav/khaah> (L 98) 'the Akha people' -- cf. <luD-Mienh> 'the lu people, lu Mien' with N first; <nawqv-go> (L 261) 'cove, pigeon' ("bird-

dove/pigeon*), <byauz-hleix> (L 57) 'star-fish' ("fishstar"), <naang-dzung=sim> 'pinwcrm' ("worm-pin/needle"), <kaeng-pyei> 'caterpillar' ("insect-hair"): <pyei> (< Ch. (AD #721)), with ‡tone gone to ‡clear -- cr ‡initial gone to ‡voiceless) (but cf. opposite order in <kuD-maeqc-kaeng> (L 119) 'large, brown, flying beetle' ("corn-insect")), <dyangx-kwaa> (L 86) 'papaya tree' ("tree-melon/cucumber": <kwaa> < Ch. (AD #432)) -+ but cf. <somv-dyangx> (L 215) (a kind cf tree), <byauh=tomh-tshuqv> (L 57) 'big-kernel rice' ("rice=big-kernel"), <lai-pyaangh> (L 289) 'cauliflower' ("vegetable-flower"), <kwaa-uan> 'large water-melon/ ("melon-water"), <bunqv-zeih> (L 349) 'ccllar bone' ("bonepaddle"), <uam-dzuih> (L 11) 'saliva' ("water-mouth").

It should be noted here that the names of the various fingers and toes are also "head-tirst" but the modifiers are not, or at least not positively, nouns. Likewise, the compound names of higher animals are "heac-first", but we have not positively identified any of their modifiers as nominal; there are plenty with <u>verbal</u> modifiers: e.g., <maaz-pen> (L 243) "zebra" ("horse-striped"). Apart from these natural phenomena we have a handful of other compounds: e.g., <pyauv-phaangh> (L 33) "a house with a guest plaform" ("house-platform"), <nyaanh-hlaax> (L 271) "salary" ("money-month"), <hungh-tiax≠dau-peih> (L 230) "king of the earth" ("king-father=earth-surface"), <tshia=dau> (L 173)

`land vehicles' ("vehicle-land": cf. <tcuz-tshia> `train'
("fire-vehicle").

As regards IS, this normally occurs to the left of "-" i.e., lowest-level juncture. The position to the left of "=" needs further checking.

Also deserving of mention here are the locational NPs consisting of prefix-containing specific location noun and located noun, when the prefix-containing specific location noun, which is the N, happens to come first: e.g., <kanyuaz=lomh> 'in(side) the forest' ("interior forest").[5] Three points are to be noted here: (a) the constituents are reversible, (apparently) without change of meaning; (b) contrary to the norm in N-N compounds, the first constituent does not undergo TS; (c) these entities are on the borderline of morphological compounds and syntactic constructions; (d) they can be fused into indubitable compounds by fixing the specific-location noun to the right of N , and dropping its prefix: thus (pyauv kaO-hlen) 'tesice the house' Ino IS on N) --> <pyauv-hlen> 'id.' (with TS). See further Sech tion 3.6.

[5] Note that the specific location noun really is the head, i.e., the compound refers to a kind of <u>inter</u> <u>rior</u>, not to a kind of forest. To obtain the meaning 'forest of/in the interior' one would have to use the subordinating particle <nyei>: thus <ka-nyuaz nyei iomn>.

Further to be noted here are compounds containing the augmentative form <tomD->. This is always preposed and since it is a bound form it is hard to assign it definitely to a form class: it translates as 'big', e.g., <tomh-byauz> 'big fish', but it may underlyingly be nominal -- 'big thing': cf. the diminutivizer <tawn>, as in <byauz-tawn> 'little fish', where <tawn> also cccurs free as a noun meaning 'child'.

We should also mention again the compounds <hungh-tiax> 'king', <hungc-maac> 'queen' (see Section 3.3.2.1.1), in which it is hard to say whether the relationship of the constituents is appositional or modificational, and if the latter, what the direction of modification is.

3.3.222 N <u>N</u> <u>compounds</u>. These are the unmarked form h <u>Sp</u> of compound, so semantically they can only be characterized negatively, i.e., they do not refer to the kind of thing specified at the beginning of Section 3.3.2.2.1. It should be noted that animate species, or parts of them, while figuring as heads in Section 3.3.2.2.2 can also function, like inanimate things, as modifiers, e.g., as possessors/originators/orientation-points or as materials:

(i) (jhia-daatv) (L 352) `cricken's wing' ("chickenwing");

Chapter III

(ii) <jhai-jhaux> (L 96) her's egg',

- (iv) <diangx-jhiouh> `wooden bridge' ("tree/woodbridge"); <hleuv-jhiouh> `bamboo bridge';
- (v) <hliaqv-jhiouh> 'iron/steel bridge',
- (vi) <hnaav-jhiouv> (L 96) 'the hardle of a crossbow'
 ("crossbow-handle"),
- (vii) (mienh-waac) 'the Mien language',
- (viii) <lai-dzawmc> (L 191) `vegetable=bcwl'
 ("vegetable=bowl"),
- (ix) <hwingx=tsicuv> (L 300) head gardener* ("gardenchief");
- (x) <maeqc-kwaengv> (L 239) `cornstalk (on which ears are growing)' ("corn-stem"),
- (xi) <hmien-syaam> (L 232) 'facial whiskers' ("facewhiskers"),
- (xii) <tsingh-kaengh> `city gate' (<tsingh> `city' < Ch. (AD #1204), <kaengh> `dcor').

Higher-order compounds that show this structure at all levels are, for instance, <ngongh-dopv=pin> (L 16) *strips of leather used as a whip' (*ox-hide=whip*), <jhiem=puazdoqv=dzaeng> (L 95) *gold ring' (*gold=hand-extremityring*). There are also higher-order compounds whose immediate constituents show this structure but have a different structure at lower levels: e.g., <in-byaatc=dzatv> *tobacco-pipe' (*opium-spicy hct=pipe*), which has the structure [N -V] = N . h adj Nsp h

So far as TS is concerned, it normally occurs at all levels of juncture joining N anc N.

sp

3.3.3 <u>Verb-containing nominal compounds</u>. These are nominalizations of clauses, and we will present them here according to the underlying clause. It is convenient to start with compounds containing adjectives, (V) first, adj because of the simplicity of the underlying clause: subject-N + predicate V . adj

3.3.31 <u>Nominal compounds containing Y</u>. These can be adj classified according to whether the V follows the N, adj h which is the usual case, or precedes it. Whatever the order, the usual rule is for the first constituent to undergo tone sandhi.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

3.3.311 Y <u>+ N compounds</u>. There is a small set of adi h adjectives that precede the It is hard to see any N . semantic rationale governing what acjectives precede the N , so we will simply give some examples of them: (syang) 'new', as in <syang-deic> (L 219) 'new fields', <loz> 'old jacket', (kaam) `sweet', as in (kaam-tsiax) (L 125) `sugar-cane' (<tsiax> `sugar-cane'), <khungx> `empty', as in (khungx=kaqc-pawng> (L 140) 'empty can', (pau) 'long, tlowing (as a robe)', as in <pau-lui> (L 39) 'long robe', <khuv> 'good', as in <khuvfjhauv> (L 139) 'a good course of normally follow N but precede it in a action.[6] Some V adī few compounds: e.g., <gaai> `cry' in <gaai-hnoi> (L 146) 'dry days' (cf. <fanO-tsiu-gaai> 'driec peppers'), "white', as in sequence (L 310) `a kind of white moth' (cf. < jhuv-paeqc> `white dog').

Both "fore-" adjectives and "aft-" adjectives may cooccur in the same compound: e.g., <syang=jhuv-jhieqv> `new black dog'. (Query: are there other than "common sense" criteria for placing the first cut, "=", where we have done so here?) It has been claimed (Miao Language Team 1972:264) that the pattern of foreplacec V is borrowed from adj Chinese, on the grounds that all the V involved are adj Chinese loanwords. This is very possibly true, but a few

L6] Note that Lombard shows no 7S here. The intermant that I checked this with, however, used IS.

remarks need to be made in this connection:

(a) There are many V 's borrowed from Chinese that adj are not prepositive -- in fact the great majority of them are not -- so the question arises why one particular small subset of Chinese-derived adjectives is prepositive. Some may be modern loans, but <kaam> `sweet', for one, is not.

(c) The very common augmentative mcrpheme <tomD-> 'big' is prepositive and is apparently not from Chinese. However since it cannot occur predicatively it cannot be demonstrated to be an adjective, and may in origin be a noun -as is its (postpositive!) diminutivize counterpart <tawn> (see Sections 3.3.2.2.1, 3.3.5.2(b)). But, whatever its origins <tomD> is now felt to be semantically akin to the V <hlo> 'big' and clearly might have helped the adj prepositive-adjective pattern to establish itself in Mien.

(d) The variability of adjective placement is just another example of the general variability of modifier placement in Mien nominal compouncs.

3.3.312 <u>The "aft=" adjective</u>. The "aft-" adjective is the norm and only a few examples will be given: <auv-hlo> (L 180) 'major wife' (<hlo> 'big'), <auv-faix> (L 5) 'a second wife (taken after death of first)' (<faix> 'small'), <auv-piqv> (L 13) 'sterile wife' (<piqv> 'barren, sterile'), <eiv-siqv> (L 3) 'red chair' (<siqv> 'red'), <eiv-waaic> 'broken chair' (<waaic> 'spoiled, broken'), <tungz-im> 'castrated pig' (<im> (L 1) 'castratec'), <tungz-tshaan> (L 180) 'medium-sized pig' (<tshaan> 'medium-sized').

More than one "aft" adjective may cccur in one and the same compound: <jhianx-jhieqv=kcx> `an agec black person' ("foreigner-black=old>, and the first "aft" adjective undergoes tone sandhi before the second.[7]

3.3.32 <u>Nominal compounds containing action-verbs</u>. Once again it is the norm for the verb to follow. He will deal with the unusual, reverse, order first.

^[7] The segmentation here is justified by that facts (a) that <jhianx-jhieqv> is an established term for a person belonging to a dark-skinned race, (b) that the adjectives are not reversible here -- one cannot say #<jhianx-kox-jhieqv>. If one wishes to alter the logical categorization to 'black aged person' one can indeed reverse the terms, but must substitute for the adjective <kox> a noun, such as <ong> (lit. "father's father" but used in certain contexts to mean 'old man'): thus <jhianx-ong-jhieqv> 'black aged person'.

3.3.321 <u>V + N compounds</u> A variety of underlying h is represented: e.g., <aaO-dzyaauc=buax> (L 9) clauses 'nickname' (presumably from <X heuc Y buax "N" aa0-dzyaauc> "X calls Y [by-the-]name "N" play"], <au-dzyaauc toic) (L 6) 'playmate, friend' (presumably from <X tshaux tcic aal-dzyaauc> "X be-with companien play", although it might equally well come from <toic tshaux X asU-dzyaauc> "companion plays with X^a, which would bring it into line with (bienz-toic) -- see below), (peu-tshia) (L 17) 'rented vehicle' (presumably from <X peu tshia> "X be-responsible-for vehicle"), <pwangh-waac> (L 31) 'words cf praise' (presumably from <X kawngv waac pwangh Y> "X speaks words praise Y"}, <bienz-toic> (L 45) 'companien' (presumably from <toic bienz X> "companion escorts X", thus an agentive construction).

The underlying clauses are tentative,[8] but at any

^[8] we would suggest that the exercise of providing (syntactic) underlying forms for compound nouns is inherently tentative. Cf. English: "One cifficulty with providing underlying forms for compounds such as lhouse cat, housefly, house guest and housepainter] is that in cases the native speaker's understanding of the most relationship is based not so much on his knowledge of the language as it is on his other kncwledge, such as what a cat, a fly, a guest, or a painter normally does in regard to a house. No adequate suggestion has yet been made as to how to handle this kind cf knowledge. many linguists feel that nonlinguistic fact, In knowledge such as this has no place in linguistic analysis. Yet speakers of English can create new compounds almost as readily as they can new sentences, and other people can understand them." (Liles 1972:17). Let us note further that in a review of nominal com-

rate it is quite clear that N stands in a variety of underh lying grammatical relationships to V. There is perhaps a tendency for N to be in some kind of obliquely-governed h relationship to V.

3.3.322 N + V compounds. Here perhaps there is a tendency for N to be either the subject cr direct object of V in underlying grammatical structure: e.g., <auv-pyaux> (L 5) 'a runaway wife' (<auv pyaux) 'the wife runs away'), (bungv-phyatv) (L 43) 'dislocated bone' (<bungv phyatv) 'the bone slips out of place'), <nyaah-pawng> (L 42) 'buck teeth' (<nyaah pawng> `the teeth protrude'), <juav-bcng> `a risen loaf of bread' ((juav bong) 'the bread rises'). So far these compounds have contained intransitive verbs, so that 3-+ V they are quite parallel in structure IN to h i bs compounds. Sometimes V is transitive (with object deleted): e.g., <tsaangz-thaw> (L 163) `an elephant used 'to hau? lcads' (cf. <tsaangz thaw kaqc-naiv> `the elephant hauls things').

Sometimes N is object: e.g., <kuO-ngwaaz=hlawpv> h (L 283) `a foster-child, adopted child (<X hlawpv kuOpounds with verbal constituents in Thai, a language in which the verbal constituent must always stane to the right, Warutamasintop (1975) argues that they should be listed in the lexicon as single lexical items rather than derived by <u>transformational</u> rules (as in Fasold 1969, Warotamasikkhadit 1972) or by <u>lexical</u> rules (as in, for instance, Thomson 1973).

ngwaaz> "X picks-up-and-carries-in-arms child"),[9] (juavipv> (L 113) 'steamed bread' (X ipv juav> "X covers-overLand-processes] bread"), (nyaanh-dawngc> (L 93) 'a downpayment' (cf. (X dawngc nyaah> "X lays-dcwn-as-security money"). Sometimes N is arguably cblique: (maaz-keh> h (L 118) 'a riding-horse' (<X keh maaz> 'X rides on a horse'), (pyaav-byaac> (L 34) 'a walking-stick' (<X byac pyaav> "X walks-with-a-stick [with-a-]stick").

3.3.4 <u>Compounds of more than two morphemes</u>. These have been treated passim under the various headings so far.[10] He can divide them into (a) compounds that break down into either bimorphemic compounds or timorphemic compounds and single morphemes on the one hand, and (b) compounds that contain a reduced relative clause on the other. Of the former category only one type remains to be treated, viz. those that contain verbs: N is complex and the modifier is a verb: e.g., <puzz-doqv=daauv> (L 25) `middle finger' ("hand-extremity=long"); we have no sure examples of aftplaced complex N.

3.3.41 <u>Nominal compounds_containing_a_reduced_relar</u> <u>tive_clause.</u> Let us note first of all that for theories

[9] See footnote about this word in below. [10] Sections 3.3.1, 3.3.2.1.1-2, 3.3.2.2.1-2, 3.3.3.1.1-2.

132.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

which attempt to provide a syntactic deep structure for nominal compounds, <u>every</u> such compound contains a reduced relative clause. But in keeping with our general approach of eclecticism and expository simplicity we will discuss under this heading only those compounds where the RC is more obviously such? i.e., where the modifier is more than simply a noun or a verb.

(a) The most typical case is where modifier is EV + N]: e.g., with modifier first, <taav-hlieqv#mienh> `blacksmith' ("beat-iron=person"),[11] <tshawh-dzaangc/kaqc-naiv> (L 183) `an eraser' ("rub=written-words#thing"), <kaatv-tseiv#dzuqc> (L 125) 'special knife for cutting paper used in spirit ("cut-paper=knife"), (mangc-pyauv#mienh) ceremonies' "watchperson' ("watch-house=person"); N tirst with h <jhianx=tsauv/pyauv> `watchman' ("fcreigner=guard (v.)-<tshia=pungx=puatv> (L 173) 'motorcycle' house"} ("vehicle=release-fart").

(b) Modifier may also be a resultative binome <pungxyiaz=gingx=dia> (L 144) `a diuretic medicine' (from <pungx yiaz gingx> (L 144) `to have pain when urinating' ("void urine smart")), <jiac/tingc/tsung=dyangx> (L 337) `a tree

^[11] Note that this is the opposite of the Thai order, as exhibited, for instance, in <u>raan=tat=phom</u> 'barber shop' ("shop=cut-hair"), but is the same as the Chinese order in such compounds.

with firm roots' ("put-down=settle=roots#tree"); we have no examples of a prepositive N when the RC is of this degree h of complexity.

(c) "RC" may also be [N + V]: <jhuv=tsaux=nauv> `a dog with a broken leg' ("dog=leg=be=broken"), <bing=tweiv=daauv> (L 76) `long=tailed monkey' ("monkey=tail=long"); in this case the compound is a nominalization of a [topic + subject]=sentence: <jhuv tsaux nauv> "With regard to the dog, the leg is broken", <bing tweiv daauv> "As for the monkey, the tail is long".

3.3.5 Other aspects of nominal compounds.

3.3.51 <u>Compounds with bound constituents</u>. These are dealt with separately, simply because it is not possible to ascribe with certainty a part-of-speech classification to bound forms. It should be recalled too that the boundary between compounds and polysyllabic morphezes is not clearcut: see Section 3.3 above, and immediately following sections below.

3.3.52 <u>Types of bound constituents</u>

(a) <u>Prefixes</u>: Some of these are clear in meaning, such as

(i) the augmentative <tomU->, which, for instance,

when added to <jhiepv> 'bear' yields <tomD-jhiepv> (L 71) 'large bear, mature bear', and when added to <mienh> 'person' yields <tomh-mienh> (L 71) 'adults, grown-ups',

- (ii) the hypocoristic (aaf) which is preposed to kinship terms: e.g., (aaftia) 'daddy', (aafmaa) 'mommy', and
- (iii) <kaiD-> (L 12), usually reduced to <kaD->, `side', in the prefix-having spatial nouns; <kaD-nyuaz> (L 122) `interior; [space] inside', <kaD-nyiac> (L 122) `exterior; [space] outside', etc.; presumably the <kuD-> of <kuD-ngwaaic> (L 128) `lspace] above' is a version of this with the reduced vowe? harmonizing with the back-rounded element of the following stressed syllable.[12]

Other prefixes are not so clear in meaning: e.g., <mO>> occurs in certain body-parts: <mE-gawngv> `head', <mO-tsing> `eye', <mO-nawmh> `ear'. Is this the same form as occurs in <mO-lomh> `cat'? It is quite likely that the <mO-> in <mOjhaangc≠tawn> `male human being, husbanc', is the same <mO-> as in <mO-siaqv≠tawn> `female human being, wife', and it may well be a reduced form of <mienh> `person' (cf. the double-

[12] See Section 1.2 for a discussion of vowelharmony.

(mienh> compounds <mienh-jhaangc#mienh> (L 327) `men', (mienh-siaqv#mienh> (L 237) `woman'), but this identification would hardly fit the other compounds just cited.

(b) <u>Suffixes</u>. The commonest suffix-like form we have collected is the diminutivizer <-tawn>, as in, for instance, <tiah-tawn> `little table', <pyauv-tawn> `little house'. This can also be used with animate nouns, such as <jhuvtawn> `little dog; puppy', and it is surely derived from the homophonous free form <tawn> `son, chilc'.

Another suffix is the vocative suffix <-aa>, which is not preceded by tone-sandhi: e.g., <kawxfaa> `Excuse me, sir' (to broach a strange man, lit. "O elder brother").

There is a possible agentive suffix <-tauh> that we have found so far in only one word, viz. <touc-tauh> (L 64) 'a messenger' (from <touc> (L 64) 'to carry or convey a message'). Like <-tawn>, <-tauh> has a homophonous semantically close free form, in this case <tauh>, the Clf for human beings, higher animals and doors: cf. Thai <u>tua</u>, in <u>tua-thEEn</u> 'a representative' (<u>thEEn</u> 'to stand instead (of)') versus <u>tua</u> the Clf for personae in a theatrical performance, animals, articles of clothing and furniture.

(c) <u>Morphans</u>. By this term we mean, following Matisoff (1973:Sec. 3.333), who created it, "orphan morphs that only

occur in one or two compounds, and to which it usually is impossible to assign any meaning distinct from that of the compound as a whole". As in Lahu, they are apt to occur in the names of animals and plants, which often run to several syllables: e.g., than # siah (L 208) 'python' (both syllables), all but the first syllable in cnawqc=sienU=houh
(L 261) (a species of bird), all three syllables in tawD=nawd=ni> (L 74) 'jackfruit', the middle syllable in chamma

(d) Loan_morphemes. Perhaps as many as fifty percent of the morphemes of Mien represent pre-modern loans from Chinese. These figure not merely as noninal morphemes, but as verbal morphemes and particles as well. Both bound and free morphemes are represented among the pre-modern loans from Chinese, as well as compounds borrowed as such. Many examples of morphemes and compounds borrowed from a premodern form of Chinese, as well as from contemporary Yunnanese and Lao are to be found in the subdivisions of Section 3.4.1 on the Numerals.

3.3.53 <u>Reduplication in nominal compounds</u>. The only kind of reduplication we have come across is separate reduplication of the constituents of additive compounds: see Section 3.3.2.2.1.2. 3.3.6 <u>Final_remarks_on_crder_cf_modifier_and_modi</u> <u>fied</u>. Subsuming under the term "mocifier", nominal morphemes, compound nouns, verbs and reduced relative clauses, we can conclude our review of the various kinds of compounds in Mien with some generalizing remarks: viz.

(a) where the modifier is a noun (simple or compound)
 or a reduced relative clause, animate N s tend to be on the h
 left, and inanimate N s, with very few exceptions, on the h
 right,

(b) where the modifier is a V , the order seems to be adj a lexical feature of the V -- most adj adj sitive but some are prepositive;

(c) where the modifier is an action verb there seems perhaps to be an ergative principle applying: if in the clause underlying the compound N is subject of an intransih tive verb or object of a transitive verb then N is on the left, otherwise it is on the right; however this ergative principle, if real, is cut across by a tendency of animate N other than those referring to ethnic Mien persons to h occur on the left under any circumstances, and for the individual word <mienb> to occur on the right under any circumstances.

Thus the ergative principle is seen most clearly in compounds where N is not <mienh> but is human. Thus: subject of intransitive verb -- <auv-pyaux> (L 5) 'a runaway wife' ("wite-flee"), <bungv-phyatv> (L 43) 'dislocated bone' ("bone=slip-out-of-line"), <tseiv-beux> (L 47) 'firecracker' ("paper-explode"), <juav-bong> (L 113) 'risen bread' ("bread-rise") object of a transitive verb -- <kuU-ngwaazadopted child' foster-chilc, hlawpv) (L 283) **`a** ("child=pick-up"),[13] <tawn-maaiz> (L 75) 'a son adopted through purchase' ("son-buy"), (juav-ipv) (L 113) 'steamed bread/ ("bread=cover-over"), <nyaanh-cawngc> (L 93) ۱a down-payment ("mcney=lay-down"), <dzuih-paengx=tsua> (L 166) 'pursed lips' ("lips=pucker (trans.)").

As examples of the subject of transitive verb with a N h other than (mienh) (such cases are hard to come by) on the right, we have (bienz-toic) (L 45) 'companion' ("escort=companion"), (touc-tauh) (L 64) 'a messenger' (cf. (touc waac) (L 64) 'to bear a message' ("to bear-as-amessage language"), and (tauh) otherwise a Clf for persons, here equals 'person'). It should be emphasized that the hypothesis that ergativity may partly explain the constituent ordering in this class of compound is highly tenta-

[13] Cf. the semantically analogous Lahu ya-g (J.A. Matisoff -- personal communication), and Malay anak_anskat.

tive, and needs to be checked against a much larger body of lexical data than we currently have.

It is in terms of the tendency of the word <mienh> to occur on the right in compounds that we can attempt to explain some peculiarities of <mienh>-ccmpouncs: (a) <mienh> can not be combined with the noun-derived diminutive <tawn> (Query: Is this because this would force it to appear on the left?); (b) where <mienh> is combined with a postpositive adjective, or intransitive verb of which it is the underlying subject, <mienh> appears on the left but another, "durmy", <mienh> is placed at the right: hence the phenomenon of the "double-mienh compound". (See Section 3.3.2.1.1).

Other examples of this are: style="texample-style-type: contemptation-contemptati

It the modifier is a relative clause derived from a "comment", or a sentential predicate construction, there may be an <u>optional</u> (mienh) on the right: thus (mienh=tsaux=nauv (_mienh)) `person with a broken leg' (see passim.

•

However, the hypothesis that the cccurrence of the final (mienh) in <u>double-(mienh)</u> compounds is caused by the discomfort of having the word (mienh) on the left of a nominal compound referring to a person needs refinement, for (a) Mien possesses compounds with (mienh) on the left that are lexically distinguished by the presence or absence of the final (mienh) -- (mienh-kox≠mienh) (L 237) 'ald person', (<kox> 'old') versus (mienh-kox> 'village headman'; notice that the latter form is semantically exccentric, it may be that the right-appended (mienh) represents a productive process used only in semantically endocentric compounds; (b) forms occur in which the left-most constituent is not (mienh); although it does have a human referent, and yet the pleonastic right-appended (mienh) may be used: e.g., (auvkwaav(=mienh)) 'widow' ("wife-bereft=person").

3.4. <u>Special_types_of_NP_(1)_quantified_NP</u>. By quantified NP we mean an NP containing a Q (see, PS-rules in Section 3.11). In connection with the quantified NP we shall discuss first the constituent "Nur" (Sections 3.4.1, et seq.) and the "Clf" (Section 3.4.2).

3.4.1 <u>The numerals (Num).[14]</u> Numerals include the

^{114]} The following account of the Mien numeral system takes as its starting point the excellent summary in Purnell 1968:312-320.

numbers 1-9, multiplicative and additive constructions involving these (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 below), and the words 'many', 'several', 'how many?' and 'half'. Partly as a result of extensive borrowing from Chinese, the Mien numeral system is a rather complicated one. Some idea of its complexity can be gathered from the following table of the numerals involved in counting in the abstract from 1-30:

| 1. yietc | 11. tsiepc-yietq | 21. nyic-tsiepc=yietq |
|------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 2• i | 12. tsiepc-nyeic | 22. nyic-tsiepc=nyeic |
| 3. pua | 13. tsiepc-faam | 23. nyic-tsiepc=faam |
| 4. pyei | 14. tsiepc-feix | 24. nyic-tsiepc=feix |
| 5. pyaa | 15. tsiepc-hmz | 25. syic-tsiepc=hmz |
| 6. jhuv | 16. tsiepc-luaqc | 26. ryic-tsiepc=luaqc |
| 7. siac | 17. tsiepc-tshietv | 27. nyic-tsiepc-tshietv |
| 8. hietc | 18. tsiepc-petv | 28. nyic-tsiepc=petv |
| 9. duah | 19. tsiepc-jhuav | 29. ryic-tsiepc=jhuav |
| 10. tsiepc | 20. nyic#tsiepc | 30. faa-tsiepc |

In the above table, numbers 1-9 are <u>simple</u>, i.e., they consist of a single morpheme, numbers 11-30 are <u>complex</u>, i.e., they consist of multiple morphemes, while <tsiepc> `ten' is probably complex in underlying structure (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below). What makes the above set of numerals relatively complicated, as East Asian languages go,[15] is (a) the suppletion (no common expression of 2-9

[15] The Japanese numeral system is even more compli-

as between simple 2-9 on the one hand, and 11-999 on the other) and (b) the morphophonemics, to some extent segmental but more especially tonal, i.e., the occurrence or non-occurrence of tone sandhi. (See Section 3.4.1.31.1.1.8 below.)

3.4.11 <u>Classification_cf_numeral_mcrphemes_by_co</u> <u>occurrence.</u> In terms of co-occurrence possibilities the numeral morphemes for 1-9 fall into three mutually exclusive sets, and a fourth set which largely overlaps with the second. The "powers of ten" are parcelled out among the first two sets. The sets are as tabled below:

cated.

| <u>No</u> • | Set 1 | Set Il | Set 111 | Set IV |
|--------------------|------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. | yietc | yietv | kauv≎≑, taa(x)∻≑ | kcih≎≑, meix≎∻, mwaangz≎÷ |
| 2. | ī | nyeic nyic | naix≑≎ | na ix‡‡ |
| 3. | pua | taam faa- | san | taan |
| 4. | pyei | feix | SUX | teix |
| 5. | руаа | hmz | UV | hmz, manv≑≑ |
| 6. | jhuqv | luaqc | luc | luaqc |
| 7. | siac | tshietv | tshic | tshietv |
| 8. | hietc | petv | paac | petv |
| 9. | duah | jhuav | jhiouv | jhuav |
| \ten/ | | tsiepc | sipv | tsiepc |
| "hundred" | | paeqv | | |
| `thousand" | tshin | | | |
| `ten thousand" | waanc | | | |
| `hundred thousand' | sinx | | | |
| "million" | laanh | | | |
| `many' | tshamv | | | |
| `several' | tsiax | | | |
| how many | buqc-tsiax | | | |
| 'half' | daamv | | | |
| the whole | tsiangx-* | | | |
| "only one" | duqc | | | |

- This form is entered in L 152 as if its underlying tone were <-h> and tone sandhi did not apply. On the grounds that it is an areal feature for verbs which mean 'to finish' to also mean 'all, the whole' I am interpreting the phonetically falling tone as simply reflecting tone sandhi between the verb <tsiangx> (L 153) 'to complete; to become finished' as the following Clf, as occurs with <tshamv> 'many', <daamv> 'half' and perhaps vacuously with <duqc> 'only cne' (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1(B)(g) below.
- ⇒⇒ Form not necessarily a numeral: see Section 3.2.5
 below.
- ⇒⇒⇒ My informants deny that <manv> is in any sense a numeral, but Purnell (1968:317-322) cites it as such (see Section 3.2.5 below).

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

There is more on co-occurrence questions at Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.3 below.

3.4.12 <u>Provenience of the Num morphemes.</u> 'Une' of Set I is fairly obviously from Chinese, but the tone is irregular (cf. the regular 'one' of Set 11). The numerals from "twc" to "nine" of Set 1 presumably gc back to proto-Miac-Yao.116] Set II, and Set II in its entirety, along with 'thousand', 'ten thousand' and 'hundred thousand' are premodern loans from Chinese; 'million' is from Lao.1171 3-9 of Set II are modern loans from Chinese,[18] i.e., from some form of southwestern Mandarin. <sipv> cf Set III is presumably from Lao. The remaining forms of Set 111, as well as those of Set IV which do not coincide with Set 11 require further study.

3.4.13 Ordinary and special numeration. Since Sets III and IV are highly restricted functionally (see below), we shall confine our remarks in this section to Sets 1 and 11

^[16] There are some problems here: see Purnell 1970. [17] Purnell (1968:317-322) offers no form for `million', but presumably the Thailand Mien have borrowed the Northern Thai form, which in its kien guise may well be identical with the Lao-derived form.

^[18] Attributions to Chinese are tased on Downer (1973), simplifying his stratification to two: modern and pre-modern loans. For further refinement and discussion of problems see Downer op. cit. Presumably the rime of (jhuav) '9' comes from contamination with (duah) 'id'.

whose functions can be divided into (a) <u>crdinary</u> numeration, cardinal and ordinal, including counting in the abstract, and (b) <u>special</u> numeration.

3.4.131 Ordinary numeration.

3.4.1311 Cardinal numerals.

3.4.13111 <u>Morphophonemics_of_the_numerals</u>. From the scope of the term morphophonemics we exclude the suppletive phenomena discussed in Section 3.4.1 and Section 3.4.1.1 above, while including in it variation in the form of morphemes whether determined by phonological, grammatical or lexical factors.

(A) <u>Segmental morphophonemics</u>.

(a) <u>Obligatory</u> (i) <nyeic> '2' of Set II, is replaced by <nyic> when it multiplies <tsiepc> 'ten', i.e., when it corresponds to English "twen-" (see Section 3.4.1 above). (ii) <faam>, '3' of Set II, is replaced by <faa> in a few cases, e.g., (1) when it multiplies <tsiepc> 'ten', i.e., when it corresponds to English "thir-", and (2) when modifying <hlaax> 'month' (see Section 3.4.1.3.2.4 below). Not enough cases of the replacement have been found to determine whether it is conditioned phonologically, grammatically or lexically. Further investigation is needed.

(b) <u>Optional</u> (1) Even at fairly slow rates of speaking [tsi_p] representing <tsiepc> 'ten, -ty' is replaced by [tsi_]] when followed by the addend <luaqc> '6'; i.e., in 16, 26, 36, etc. and larger complexes including these. {2} At slightly faster rates of speec [tsi_p] changes before complement morphemes in additive constructions as follows:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \} \\ \{\text{tsi}\} \\ \{\text{tsi}$$

- (1) What happens at this rate of speaking in the environment "/--<-jhuaqv>" requires further study.
- (2) At still faster rates of speed [tsiap] --> [tsal, with indeterminate vowel (and tone) before all complement morphemes in additive constructions.

(B) <u>Ional_morphophonemics</u> IS occurs (a) in the morphemes for 1 and 3 of Set II when preceeding a "Clf " rn multiplicand[19] (see, for instance, table in Section 3.4.1 above); (b) between <tsiepc> `ten, -ty' and a following addendum "ones" (see, for instance, table in Section 3.4.1 above); (c) between <nyeic> 'two' and following <parqv> multiplicand in short-form numerals (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4 belcw); (d) between <nyic> `twen-' and the following Clf rn. multiplicand (tsiepc), if this construction is followed by addend `ones'-morpheme: cf. <nyic/tsiepc> `20' and an <nyic-tsiepc=yietv> `21'; (e) between the morpheme for `3' of Set II and the word <hlaax> `mcnth' in <taa-hlaax> `third lunar month' (see below); (f) in short-form Num's (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4 below) between the penultimate power-often morpheme and the final mcrpheme; (g) between the numerals <tshamv> `many', <daamv> `half', <tsiangv> `whole' -- and perhaps vacuously (dugc) 'cnly one' -- and a tollowing Clf.

3.4.13112 <u>The grammatical structure of numbers</u> in Section 3.4.1 above we distinguished between simple and complex numerals. In the numbers (yietv-paeqv> `100', (yietc tshin> `1,000', (yietc waanc> `10,000', (yietc sinx> `100,000' and (yietc laanh> `1,000,000', the numeral (yietv ~yietc> `1' may optionally be deleted according to the general rule of optional deletability of that numeral in

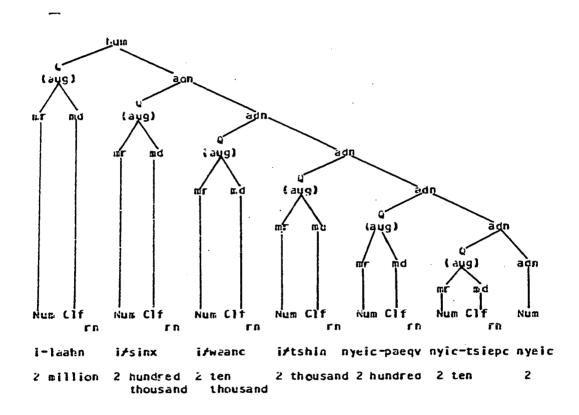
1191 For explanation of terms "multiplicand", "addendum", "Clfrn" see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 directly below.

quantity-expressions (Q) (see further Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below), and the resultant numerals are then superficially simple but underlyingly complex. (tsiepc) is exceptional in that it can never be preceded by (yietvo) yietc) in the number '10', but there is evidence that the (yietvo) yietc) is there underlyingly (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1 below), so that we could conclude that the '1'-deletion rule is <u>obligatory</u> with (tsiepc).

In complex numerals, multiplicative constructions consist of a <u>multiplier</u>, (mr), or numerator, and a <u>multiplicand</u> (md) which will be a classifier (Clf) expressing a power of ten. We will follow Matisoff in calling these Clf's "round number classifiers" (Clf). Complex numerals also involve rn additive constructions, which consist of an <u>augend</u> (agd) and an <u>addend</u> (adn). The constituent structure of the complex numeral 2,222,222 is shown in the tree ciagram below:

E1GURE_3(1)

The Constituent Structure_of_the_Complex_Numeral Siaanh_ifsinx_ifwaanc_iftsbin_nyeicftsiepc=nyeic2



Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Section 3.11

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

3.4.13113 Co-occurrence anong Num morphemes of Sets I. II. Sets I and II are partly complementary, e.g., if the meaning 'ten(s)' or 'hundred(s)' is to be expressed there is no choice but to use the Set II morphemes (tsiepc) and (paeqv), i.e., the choice is determined by the meaning. But choice of number morpheme is determined in syntactic rather than semantic ways as follows: (1) Set II morphemes must be used (a) as the multipliers of <tsiepc> and <paeqv>, (b) as the addends to multiples of <tsiepc>, i.e., as the addends in the numbers <tsiepc-yietv> 'll' through <jhuavf tsiepc=jhuav> '99' and complexes including these, (c) at the end of short-form numerals (see belcw); (c) before a few non-Num Clf's (i.e. Clf's that are not Clf 's: see below; **r**n (2) elsewhere use Set I. Thus:

Set I + Set II Set II + Set II

| pyei≁tshin | \$4,000" | tsiepc-nyeic | `12' |
|--------------------|------------------|--------------|-------------|
| siac#waanc | `70,000 " | hazftsiepc | \50 |
| duah f sinx | \$960,000 | faam-paeqv | `300 |

3.4.13114 <u>Short forms of numerals</u>. If a number above 100 is round it may in Mien, as in many languages of East Asia, be abbreviated. The short form of a numeral is obtained (a) by deleting the first numeral morpheme if it is 'one' (i.e. by applying the 'l'-deletion transformation to

the beginning of the numeral), along with (b) by deleting the last Clf (unless it is also the first Clf), (c) by rn converting the morpheme thrust into final position by applying rule (b) (i.e. the last mr) into Set II if it is not of Set II already, and (d) applying TS between what are now the last two morphemes, and (e) by applying TS to (nyeic) if followed by (paegy). Some examples:

| Number | Long Eorm | Short Form |
|---------|-------------------------|------------------|
| 240 | nyeic≁paeqv≠feix-tsiepc | nyeic-paeqv=feix |
| 530 | hmz≠paeqv≠faa-tsiepc | hnz/paeqv=faam |
| 1,100 | yietc≠tshin≠pyaa≁ | tshin≠yietv |
| 15,000 | yietc≁waanc≠pyaa≁tshin | pyaafwaanc=hmz |
| 170,000 | yietcfsinxfsiacfwaanc | s inx-tsh letv |
| 920,000 | duah≠s i nx≠ î ≠waanc | duah≠sinx=nyeic |

3.4.1.3.1.1.4.1. <u>Some_generativistic_remarks_on</u> <u>shortened_numerals</u>. If we regard the production of shortform numerals as a derivational process, then (i) Kule (c) must be applied after Rule (b): this means that at least some transformations must precede lexical insertion; (ii) Rule (d) must be applied after Rule (b): this means that at least some transformations apply before some rules of IS; (iii) since rules (a)--(e) above will not generate the short form of <yietv-paeqv#tsiepc> `110', which is <paeqv-yietv>

but they will do so if the "tens" Clf has a multiplier FR (yietv), i.e., if the long-form input is (yietv-paeqv≠yietvtsiepc), this counts as some evidence that the numerals (tsiepc-yietc, tsiepc-nyeic ... tsiepc-jhuav) *11, 12 ... etc. -- to which the "1"-deletion transformation obligatorily applies (See above, and below).

3.4.13115 <u>Other_features_of_Num's:</u>

(A) Num's with gaps. In Nien, as in English, and presumably in most (if not all) languages that count above ten, if the mr of a Clf is semantically zero then a gap will appear in the surface structure of the Num at both the mr and Clf positions. For instance, in Mien as in English rn. is one, or its Mien equivalent, and not, as it were, 'one' "nonety-one", or its Mien analogue. Similarly, `1,001' is one thousand and one, or its Mien analogue, and not, as it were, "one thousand no hundred and nonety-one", or its Mien analogue. Now in Mien, for Num's in the hundreds or greater showing a gap immediately before the "cnes" position, the "ones" position is filled by Set I mcrphemes: e.g., '202' ends in (i), and not in (nyeic), '203' ends in (pua), and not in <faam>, and so on.

(B) <u>Num's with <tshaux> `and'</u>. Hien further resembles English in that `201, 202, 301, 405' etc. contain an optional <tshaux> `and' in their verbalization: thus

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

<nyeic/paeqv/(tshaux/)yietc, nyeic/paeqv/(tshaux/)i ... >
*201, 202 ... / and so on.

3.4.13115 <u>Cautionary_remark_about_high_numbers.</u> There is a certain air of unreality about high numbers in Mien. Informants hesitate, for instance, about when to insert <tshaux> 'and' (indeed Purnell (1968) coes not even mention the insertion of <tshaux> at all). Informants' may further say <tsiepc tshin> instead of <waanc> for `10,000', and <paeqv tshin> instead of <six> for `10C,C00', unless they are thinking carefully.

The fact is that the Mien do not have much use for high numbers in their traditional life, and where modernization has brought the need to use them, they usually quote the high numbers in the language of modernization, i.e., Lao for the Laotian Mien (and presumably Thai for the Thailand Mien). Many Laotian Mien have had some schooling with Lao as the medium and thereby learned some arithmetic, in which case they do their computations in Lac. They are hard put to it to do even simple arithmetic in Kien.[20] Westernstyle year-numbers and dates in general are usually quoted in Lao.

[20] Cf. the situation with the Thailand Lahu: Matisoff 1963: Sec. 3.4.1.

3.4.1312 Ordinal numerals. Ordinal numerals are formed by preposing to the corresponding cardinal numeral the bound form <teiO-> or <taiO-> (< Ch. (AD #985.3)).[21] Thus:

| tei0-yietc | `first' |
|------------|-------------|
| teiO-nyeic | `second' |
| tei9-faam | `third' |
| tei0-jhuav | "ninth" |
| tei0-paeqv | `hundredtt' |
| tei0-tshin | *thcusandth |

.

etc. For 'first' there is also the morpheme (taauh> 'first, foremost; the top; the beginning' (L 68) < Chi. (AD #1194) (pre-modern loan). Syntactically, like cardinal Num's, the ordinals cannot be preposed directly to the head noun (N) hut require the intervention of a Clf: e.g., <teih-yietv tauh mienh> or <taauh tauh mienh> "first Clf person", 'the first person'.

^[21] The tone of the Mien form, phonetically falling, could represent either an <u>underlying</u> falling tone (assumed in Lombard's spelling of the word (L 65)) or the <u>neutralization</u> of tones 1-6 in IS. Etymclogical tones are, of course, irrecoverable in bound forms only found under IS. We are assuming that the etymological tone has indeed been lost through TS, since the Chinese origin of the word seems so patent. The etymological tone would be $\langle -c \rangle$ []], lower C.

3.4.132 <u>Special numeration</u>. Under this heading we group a miscellany of cases which are peculiar in one way or another.

3.4.1321 Usage with certain classifiers. The rule stated in Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.3 above means that Set I morphemes for 1-9 are used in front cf Clf's other than Clf's that are not Clf 's, with the exception of a couple of such Clf's that require Set II numerals. The only such Clf's that we have found so far are used in weighing precious metals: viz. (a) <tsinh> `a "mace"; tenth of a Chinese ounce, or tael' (< Ch. (AD #1072.4)) (Lombard (342) and Purnell (1968:319) show <tsin> i.e., mid tone) and (b) <lungz> Chinese ounce, tael/ (< Ch. (AE #542)). Both Clt's are</p> pre-modern loans. Perhaps the entire stylistic register for dealing in precious metals is from (pre-modern) Chinese, hence the use of the Chinese Num's.[22] Between these two Clf's and the preceding Num's the same rules of TS apply as do between mr (Num) and md (Clf) within complex Num's (see r n above). Thus (yietv-tsinh, nyeic/tsinh, faam-tsinh, feix/ tsinh> etc.

[22] Cf. specialized English terms, e.g., troy weight, etc. (An analogy brought to my attention by J.A. Matisoff, p.c.)

3.4.1322 <u>Days of the week</u>. The week and its days are cultural phenomena newly borrowed by the Mien. There is as yet no common way of talking about them.

(a) The Christian Mien borrow the Chinese word for `week' (Chinese (AD #538.1, #687)) in the form <leiz-paaix> or <liz-paaix> as well as the Chinese manner of referring to Monday through Saturday as "week one" (Chinese (AD #538.1, #687, #201)) through "week six" and Sunday as "week day" (Chinese (AD #538.1, #687, #937)), though they use the inherited PMY morpheme for `day'). Set II numerals are used. Thus:

| <leiz-paaix≠yietv></leiz-paaix≠yietv> | `Monday" |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| <leiz-paaix≠nyeic></leiz-paaix≠nyeic> | `Tuesday" |
| <leiz-paaix≠faam></leiz-paaix≠faam> | 'Wednesday' |
| <leiz-paaix≠hnoi></leiz-paaix≠hnoi> | Suncay" |

Since it has strong Christian overtones, this way of referring to the days of the week is something of a shibboleth among the Mien.

(b) Purnell mentions (1968:319) another way of referring to the days of the week which is not recognized by my informants: -- viz. to use the ordinal Num's, calling the days, again starting with Monday, "first day", "second day" and so on: thus -- <tei0-yietv hnoi, tei0-nyeic hnoi> `Monday, Tuesday' etc. Purnell coes not make it clear what Sunday is called in this system.

(c) The usual wont of my informants is to borrow the Lao names for the days of the week (which themselves are borrowed from Thai, where they were calcued on the English or French prototypes -- "Moon day, Mars day, Venus day" etc. -- using the Sanskrit names of the heavenly bodies): Thus

| | wanh | jhan | Monday" |
|------|-------------------------|----------|-------------|
| wanh | angkhaanh ∞ aakh | anh | `Tuesday" |
| | wanh | phutv | 'Wednesday' |
| | wanh | phavhatv | 'Thursday' |
| | wanh | sukv | 'Friday' |
| | wanh | saux | `Saturday' |
| | wanh | aathitv | Suncay! |

3.4.1323 <u>Days of the lunar month</u>. Here the bound form (saengD-> (< Ch. (AD #8040 (?))) is subjected to TS and preposed to the Set II Num's. Thus:

| saengD-faam | ` 3rd | day | of | the | lunar | sonth* |
|---------------|--------------|-----|----|-----|-------|--------|
| saeng0-hmz | `5th | day | ot | the | lunar | gonth" |
| saengi]-luaqv | %6th | day | cf | the | lunar | gonth' |

etc.

3.4.1324 <u>The twelve_lunar_month_names.</u> Except for the first month (see below) these are formed by preposing the Set II numerals to the morpheme <hlaax> `moon, month'. For the third month the numeral <faam> undergoes IS (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1(B) above) and also loses its final nasal (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1(A) above). According to Purnell (1966:319) TS occurs between <u>all</u> the numerals and <hlaax>, but according to my informants it occurs only between <faa(m)> and <hlaax>, i.e. the rules are the same as between mr and md in complex numerals (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 and Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.1.2(a) above. Thus:

| tsi0-hlaax | 'lst lunar month' |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| nyeic≁hlaax | 2nd lunar month |
| faa-hlaax | '3rd lunar month' |
| feixthlaax | 14th lunar month/ |
| hmz≁hləax | '5th lunar month' |
| luaqv≁hlaax | "6th lunar month" |
| tshietvfhlaax | '7th lunar month' |
| petv#hlaax | '8th lunar month' |
| jhuav#h1aax | 9th lunar month? |
| tsiepcfhlaax | `lGth lunar month' |
| tsiepc-yietv≠hlaax | `llth lurar month' |
| tsiepc-nyeic≠hlaax | 12th lunar month? |

The lunar calendar is borrowed from the Chinese, with the

159.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

same system of intercalary months. "To intercalate' is (nyunc> (Chinese (AD #948), pre-modern). Knowing this we can explain the form (tsiD> in the name of the first month as (Chinese (AD #1198)), which as a pre-modern loan would yield (tsing>, which would then, like (faam> undergo TS and lose its final nasal; Purnell (1968:319) gives its underlying tone as (-h>, but this must be just a guess: cf. (tsingh>, (L 155) "city (formerly wallec)" (Ch. (AD #1204). It might be pointed out here, in passing, that Hien has also borrowed the rest of the traditional Chinese calendrical and horary system of ten "celestial stems" and twelve "earthly branches", though it is falling into desuetude except, for divinatory and ritual purposes, among supernaturalist experts.

3.4.1325 Naming of offspring by birth_order. "Childhood names are basically numbering systems, one for boys and another for girls ... The bound forms [`lauv'] and [`mh'] (a contraction of [`muic'] `daughter' [with IS -- C.C.J) are preposed to names for boys and girls respectively". (L 331) The names for the sons and daughters are respectively what I have called Num's Sets III and IV in Section 1 above. Here are the forms 1 collected, and alongside them Lombard's forms (332). They run from first-born down to tenth-born (the ranking actually assigned an individual may be fictitious (L 332)). As usual, I have respelled Lombard's forms.

Set_III:__Sons

Court

Lombard

| 1 | laqc kauv, lauv taax | lauv kauv, lauv taa |
|----|----------------------|---------------------|
| 2 | taqc naix | lagc naix |
| 3 | lauv san | lauv san |
| 4 | lauv sux | łauv sux |
| 5 | lauv uv | lauv uv |
| 6 | lauv luc | lauv luc |
| 7 | lauv tshic | lauv tshic |
| 8 | lauv paac | lana baac |
| Ģ | lauv jhiouv | lauv jhiouv |
| 10 | tsiepc | lauv sipv |

Set_IV:__Dauchters

Court Loubard koih. m0neix meix, mwangz kuv neix, mDmwangz 2 naix m0naix ¥ 3 faam faam 4 w feix feix 5 ¥ hmz manv 6 W luazc Ħ Juage 7 . tshietv tshietv 8 . petv petv 9 jhuav . jhuav 10 tsiepc tsiepc

Note that Set IV for the most part coincides with Set II, while Set III, as we said above, represents some form of south-western Mandarin, presumably the form of Tunnanese used as a lingua franca in the Golden Triangle.[23] <taax> for the eldest son would represent Chinese (AD #952) (see Mien-Mandarin tone correspondences in Downer 1973:10), while Lombard's "taa" is difficult to interpret: perhaps it is a

^[23] See, for instance, Lombard (9-99), s.v. "Janj"
(i.e. <jhanx)),</pre>

mistranscription. The provenience and interpretation of Kauv, naix, koih, meix, mwangz> require further investigation. My informants deny that the name (manv> has any numerical import. Notice that 'tenth sch' is a suppletive Num: in Court's list it lacks the prefix (lauv> and is borrowed from Set II. In Lombard's list it is borrowed, presumably from Northern Thai, though it might equally well be from Lao.

3.4.1326 <u>Numbers in lexicalized combinations</u> following are a few examples of numerical expressions that are special in one way or another:

(a) <feix-kawqv> "to be square' (etymclogically the pre-modern representation of Chinese (AL #809, #500)). This differs from the ordinary enumerative expression <pyei pung kawqv> "four corners", which has the Set 1 Num <pyei> and the Clf <pung> "side" (< Ch. (AD #25)) (<pung> is omitted according to Purnell (1968:319). It can function as a preposed attributive expression as in <feix-kawqv#tiah> "square table" (with TS at the "=" juncture according to Purnell (1968:320)). <feix-kawqv> also differs from ordinary numerative expressions that show the Set 11 numeral <feix> in that it subjects this mcrpheme to TS (see Section 3.4.1.3.1.1.2 above).

(b) <feix-pung> 'in all directions'. This differs from the corresponding ordinary numerative expression <pyei pung> 'four sides' (see (a) immediately above; <pung> is functioning here as an Auto-Clf (see below)) in showing the Set II numeral, and like <feix-kawgv> in (a) above, it is irregular in showing TS. Again like <feix-kawgv> its constituents can be severally reduplicated to produce <feix-feix=pung-pung> 'in all the four guarters and directions' (no TS at the "=" juncture according to Purnell (1968:320)).

(c) <faam-wuanh#tshietv#baeq> (cf. L 363, where no TS between <faam> and <wuanh>) "the three major souls and seven lesser souls' (the pre-modern representation of Chinese four-syllable-expression. This is a formulaic expression used in invocations. It is irregular in using the Set II numerals and omitting Clf/s: cf. the ordinary numerative expression <pus nawm wuanh> (L 304) "the three major souls'.

(d) <faam-pung#feix#louc> (L 288) *all directions* (etymologically the pre-modern representation of a Chinese four-syllable expression meaning literally "three sides four roads"). This expression, like (a)-(c) above, is special in using the Set II numerals and in lacking a Clf before <louc> *road*.

The syntactic peculiarities of the above four numerical lexicalized combinations may be due to their stemming from the

liturgical or song language (i.e., being borrowed from and/or modelled on classical Chinese).

3.4.2 <u>Classifiers</u>. A classifier (Clf) is a type of limited noun that occurs in immediate constituency with numerals (Num). Semantically Clf's serve to specify in some way, either qualitatively or quantitatively, a noun (overt or implicit), or a verb (see Figures 3(II)-3(III), below). In the case of Clf's specifying verbs the Clf most commonly means 'times', but other meanings, such as 'ways' are possible, and syntactically the Clf will immediately include a VP of which the Varior a VP immediately dominating it) is head (see Figure 3(IV), below). In the case where the Clf specifies a noun it will be included in a NP of which the N is the head, at least in underlying structure.[24]

Because even Clf's that specify verbs are themselves a kind of noun, and thus by definition form part of a NP although functioning adverbially, we shall deal with all Clf's in the present section. We shall refer to classifiers of nouns as noun-Clf's and classifiers of verbs as verb-

^[24] If the noun is not present in surface structure and the referent is situationally obvious, it may be necessary to say that the Clf Is specifying either a semantic entity whose lexical <u>significant</u> happens to have been deleted, or, more probably, that Clf's specify the real-world referent directly, regardless of how (and whether) the latter is lexically encode.

Clf's. For many of the terms and the general plan of the following exposition we are indetted to Matisoff (1973:Sec. 3.42). Syntactically, Clf's perform the function of enabling Num's to enter into constituency with nouns and verbs. Semantically, they individuate, instantiate or otherwise precise the reference of a noun or verb.

Especially with nouns, where homonymy or polysemy is present, Clf's perform a very important disambiguating function, as can be seen from the following examples: (i nawm dia> 'two pills' versus (i tseu dia> 'two bolts of cloth'; (i nawm tsyangh-hoc> 'two hours' versus (i puan tsyangh-hoc> 'two minutes'; (i litv uam> 'two liters of water' versus (i tiuh uam> 'two streams/rivers' versus (i pouc uam> 'two crossings of a stream/river'. As (i pouc uam> 'two crossings of a stream/river'. As (i pouc uam> shows, the Clf may not only <u>narrow</u> the sense of a MP, but it may also add to it -- in this case adding a deverbative meaning. It should also be noted that Clf's may fail to disambiguate: thus (i tiuh jhung> means either 'two dragons' or 'two rainbows'; (i tiuh pyauv> means either 'two trails' or 'two methods'.

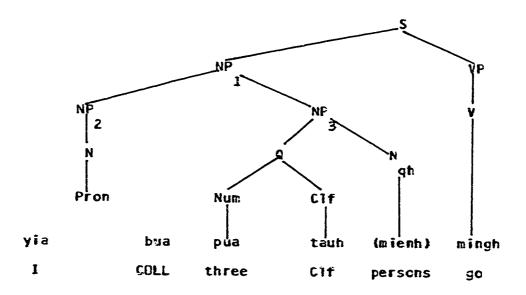
As a final general remark on classifiers, it should be noted that finer points of classifier usage are very likely to vary from one locality or sub-cialect to another.

EIGURE_3(11)

Structure_of_<via_bua_pua_taub_(mienb)_mingh>

'Me_three_co'

NP and NP are in apposition to one another. 2 3



Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

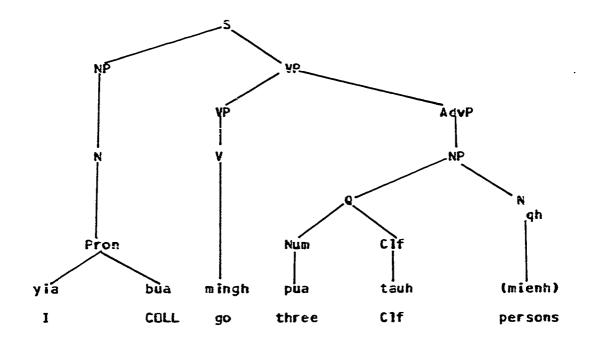
Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

EIGURE_3(111)

Syntactic_Structure_cf

<yia-bua_mingh_pua-taub_mienh>

'Ke_go_as_a_threescre_(a_trois)'



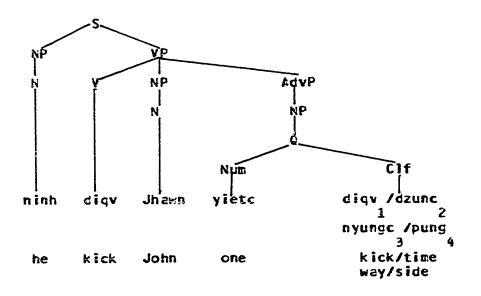
Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

168.

•

EIGURE_3(IV)

Syntactic_structure_of_<ninh_cigy_Jbawn yietc_digy/dzunc/Cungc/pung>



Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11 Etymologically we have traced several Clf's to Chinese, and it is very likely that further investigation would reveal a Chinese origin for quite a few more. 3.4.21 <u>Kinds_of_Clf's.</u> On formal or semantic grounds it is convenient to distinguish at least the following subtypes of Clf's.

3.4.211 Auto-Clf's.

3.4.2111 <u>Noun-autoclassifiers</u>. Some nouns may be their own Clf's. This is often the case in Southeast Asian languages with classifier-systems, but Fien seems to contain remarkably few such. In fact the present investigator has found only a handful, of which several refer to units of time, e.g., <hooi> `day' and <hnycangx> `year'. Furthermore they seem to have the syntactic peculiarity that the homophonous-coreferential head noun must be obligatorily deleted.

Thus, in order to say 'two days' or 'three years' one says (i hnoi) or (pua hnyaangx), and these are normal Num + Clf constructions, but though the head noun should follow the Num + Clf construction directly it seems to be ungrammatical to say, for instance, (i hnoi) or (pua hnyaangx hnyaangx) and so on, presumably because of a surface structure constraint blocking the cocurrence of sequences of homophononous-coreferential nouns in the same NP (it sounds awkward). Some other autoclassifiers of nouns are: (pung) 'direction; side', (nyungc) 'kind, way'.

3.4.21111 Eamilial_ncun=autoclassifiers_of_con= certed_involvement. These are an interesting kind of N= autoclassifier, also found in other languages in the area. As human beings, kinsmen normally take the specific Clf's for human beings (see Section 3.4.2.1.3), but when certain combinations of kinsmen are living or acting together as a group certain kinship terms may be used as autoclassifiers.

This then brings us to the way one says 'father, mother and child (together)', viz. <pus hmwangv> ("three hmwangy's"), though one can also say, periphrastically, <i hmwangv tshaux tauh tawn> lit. "two hmwangy's and lone]

human-Clf offspring".

3.4.2112 Verb-autoclassifiers: homochonous_cognate objects. In some cases a verb may be its own Clf. Thus the verb 'to kick' is (dicv), and in croer to say 'he gives John one kick' one may say <ninh diqv Jhawn yietc diqv> ("he kicks John one kick"), in which the second (diqv) is a fif, and could be replaced by the Clf <czunc> `time' without changing the meaning (See Figure 3(IV) in Section 3.4.2). This use of a verb as its own Clf seems to be possible to a quite considerable extent, and whether the phenomenon is lexically or syntactically constrained is a question requiring further investigation. Using a verb as its autoclassifier is in fact using it as a <u>homophonous cognete object</u> (see Section 3.4.2.1.2 below regarding cognate objects). Where the verb is transitive, i.e., where it has an autonomous noun as (outer) object, the verb-autoclassifier can be regarded as functioning as a measure classifier of the autonomous noun (see Section 3.4.2.1.4 below).

3.4.212 <u>Verb-Classifiers (V-Clf's)</u>. A diagram of the syntactic structure in which V-Clf's occur is given in Figure 3(1V) above. What is in fact happening is that they are occurring in NP's dominated by adverbial phrases (AdvP), i.e., functioning adverbially. They are in fact what are traditionally known as <u>cognate objects</u>, and Chao 1968:312 et seq. uses this latter term with reference to Chinese. As Chac (1968:312) notes, cognate objects may occur as structures indicating the number of times of an action, its duration, extent, direction or destination. We shall discuss them further in Chapter IV. But we can go beyond cognate objects and argue that the Clf's in Figure 3(111) are also V-Clf's. But these are clearly also N-Clf's, so that we would have to say that V-Clf's comprise all N-Clf's plus the subset that can occur in the structure in Figure 3(IV).

It is further arguable that the Q cf Figure 3(IV) at a deeper level has the same structure of the Q cf Figure 3(IX) in Section 3.11 below, but that the N does not occur on the h surface either because (a) it is identical with the Clf, i.e., it is an Auto-Clf, and thus undergoes an obligatory deletion of N that is homophonous and coreferential with h the Clf (see (1) above), or because (b) it is abstract, i.e., it is a bundle of semantic features with no phonological representation, or perhaps is represented by a recent formal-register loanword equivalent to 'cccasion', 'method' etc. which is too pedantic to be in natural use.

3.4.2121 <u>A selection of Verb-Clt's</u>. Since, as we have indicated above in Section 3.4.2.1.1.2, verbs may be autoclassified, i.e., verbs may generate homophonous autoclassifiers to an extent that meeds further investigation, we

shall not try to list homophonous vert-autoclassifiers -there may after all turn out to be as may of them as there are verbs in the language -- we shall list some nonhomophonous V-Clf's. Again there is some overlap with other kinds of classifiers:

<pouv> for strokes of an axe <pouc> for steps (cf. (biac)), stages, stream crossings <pung> for directions, sices <biac> for steps or strides; stitches for rows of hoeing <phawnq> for a certain period of time; trips <touc> calamities; crops; (cf. <thawnax> for marriages <tshaamx>); stages of life for puffs of air cr blasts of wind <kawng> <jiac> for doses, or events in which several things happen at the same time (also (giac)) <dzunc> for times, occurrences, instances <nyunqc> for manners, ways, modes <luix> for litters of animals

3.4.213 <u>Specific Clf's</u>. These are the "classifiers" par excellence, that have, in principle, to be memorized separately for each noun in the language. However to describe them thus is an overstatement for at least two reasons: (a) nouns referring to non-discrete entities take <u>measure</u> Clf's that are, in many cases, cetermined not by the

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

identity of the noun, but, as we said in Section 3.4.2.1.3 above, by real-world circumstances, i.e., the object or action used to do the measuring, and (b) specific Clf*s tend to refer not so much to particular <u>ncuns</u> as to <u>classes</u> of <u>real-world entities</u>, such as human beings, animals, long thin objects and so on.

Having said that, however, we must, on the other hand, note (a) that some specific Clf's are used for very restricted classes of things, such as <simv>, apparently used only of lengths of thatch mats (the latter being used for roofing a house), as in <pyei sinv gaan> `four lengths of thatch mats" (L 209, 341), or <gwaav> for branches or limbs (L 199, 342), and (b) that in some cases it is hard to see what the distinguishing feature of the class is, as with the specific Clf <thawngz> used for calamities, marriages, crops or stages of life, as in (pua thawngx maanc) 'three calami-341) -- in fact, in Mien, as in other Asian noun-classifying languages, there is one particular Clf (see Section 3.4.1.2.4 below), the usage of which seems hypertrophied to a point that might threaten the entire system of classification.

Having made those cautionary remarks, let us give some examples: <laanh> for human beings (adults cnly, according

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

to Lombard (343), denied by my informants), <tauh> (< Ch. (AD #1015)) for human beings, higher animals, ghosts and spirits (sometimes, see Section 3.4.2.1.6), and doors (L 65, 342); <tiuh> (< Ch. (AD #257)) for long narrow objects, animate or inanimate, literal or metaphorical, including snakes, dragons, rainbows, rivers, rcads, stories, songs, lives and minds; (< Ch. (AD #740.2))</pre> for pencils, guns and other long, thin objects there my informants said that the objects were not as long as these classified by <tiuh>, but it should be noted that cengx> also exists as a head-noun meaning 'handle' -- its only point of contact with Chinese, for the Chinese original is not, apparently used as a Clf in the source-language, as are the other Chinese terms so far cited); <chongx> for rooms, narrow fields, small spaces (L 108, 34-2); cphaan> for mosquito nets; <dzong> for fields to be cultivated.

Where the grouping effected by the specific Clt does not seem to make sense; as, for instance that of human beings, higher animals and doors, there are at least three possible explanations: (a) that further investigation would reveal that the native speakers do perceive the entities grouped as having something in common, for instance, that doors are to the Mien somehow anthropo- or zoomorphic;[25]

^[25] The fact that the Chinese source-word for <tauh> means 'head' as a Nh in Chinese should be borne in mind.

Chapter III

(b) that there once was something in common which cultural change -- let us say, a change in the design of doors -- has now effaced; (c) that not only the <u>Clf</u> was borrowed, as in the case of <tauh>, but also the <u>grouping of entities</u> to be used with the Clf (which pushes the problem of the reason for the grouping back to the source-language).

It should further be pointed out, typelegically, that what distinguishes Mien and other neun-classifying languages from, say, English, is not the existence of Clf's per se -after all, we say in English "an item of news", "a stroke of luck", etc. -- but the <u>absence of count nouns</u> as a grammatical category. For the singular-plural marking is a means of <u>individuating</u> nouns, and lacking this method, other types of language perforce resort to other stratagems: it is individuation which is the specific function of "specific Clf's".

3.4.2131 <u>A selection of specific classifiers</u>. The following list of specific classifiers is compiled from L 341-343 and from my own work with informants. We feel that it is fairly complete, but we make no claim that it is absolutely exhaustive. There is some inevitable overlap with Measure Clf's and Group Clf's:

<aax> for words or phrases (cf. <jhioux>; mouthfuls; small amounts <pienx> for flat, smooth objects, such as razor

177.

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

blades (which can also take <dzung>), phonograph records (which can also take <khwaiv>); left-overs

- for planks and long flat objects (man of
 these can also take <khwaiv>)
- <paengx> for pencils, guns, and other long thin objects (cf. <tiuh>)
- for brooms; bundles of things
- (puaqv) for areas, sections or sides (cf. (pung));
 groups of people
- for books

- (pyauv) for families, households (cf. (puanc))
- for pages
- (phoux) for ships, boats; grirdstones; scissors;
 pliers
- cphaan> for mosquito nets
- <tienv> for dots or periods
- <tiuh> for long narrow objects, such as snakes, dragons, trees, sticks, rivers, trails, rainbows; for stories, songs, minds, lives
- <tiuc> for reasons, tasks, Elements (of the Four Elements)
- <teix> for jackets and trcusers
- (tauh) for people (cf. <laanh>) animals, spirits, ghosts; doors

Chapter III

for clouds; for bunches and clusters <tawv> for calamities; crcps; marriages; stages of <thawngx> life <diepv> for drops for hands and feet (also <kiaqv)) < ih i aqv> for words and phrases (cf. Kaax)) <jhioux> for rooms, narrow fields and small spaces <chongx> <kiaqv> (see < ihiaqv>) for seasons (Auto-Clf) <kweix> for matters, affairs, sections; storeys of a <khaang> house <khuv> for needles, and small irstruments for flat, thin things (ct. (pienx)); curtains <khwaiv> <qwaav> for branches, limbs for thin flat things, such as sheets of paper, letters, blades of grass <tseiv> for areas of confinement in the spirit world <tsangc> for knives; clumps, clusters <tsung> for fields to be cultivated <dzonq> for opposite poles in time or space <hingv> for sides, parts, edges or divisions <maenqx> (see Section 3.4.2.1.4) <nawm> for people (adults, cf. <tauh>) <laanh>

3.4.214 <u>The_broad=purpose_specific_Clf_Knawm2</u>. Like many languages with systems of noun-classification, Mien has one specific Clf of very general scope.[26] This is <nawm>.

However it does not seem to share with Lahu {mas, the feature of being freely substitutable for more specific Clf's. Informants reject its use for human beings, no matter how despised, and higher animals, for instance. But It is used with lower animals, and a whole array of material and immaterial entities: for instance, while fishes require <tauh>, <nawm> is used with birds, fowls, tortoises, crabs, shrimps, ants, flies, mosquitoes and insects in general, fruit and vegetables (in which case it refers to individual items), medicine (in which case it refers to pills), balland grain-shaped things (perhaps its criginal sphere of usage), cups, bottles, boxes, bags, sacks, horns of animals, teeth, hammers, vehicles, houses, shops, beaches, places, countries, forests, corners, barriers and checkpoints, written characters, names, timepieces, watches of the night, months, seasons (which can also be auto-classified), sculs and certain kinds of ghosts (others take (tauh)), customs and traditions, sorrows (there may be some overlap with (thawngx> here (see above)), etc., etc.

In general it is the "garbage can" Clt. It seems to be broader in usage than Thai Jan, for instance, but it is narrower than Mandarin (AD #422.4) and Lahu \underline{ma} , in that it can-

^[26] See Hatisoff (1973:Sec. 3.42(7)) with fn. 61, on Lahu and in general. To his examples we can add the Malay Clf <u>buan</u>.

not be used with human beings and higher animals. Its use with immaterial and abstract entities seems to guarantee it a great future. With its catchall character it is hard to say whether it is threatening the whole semantic basis of the specific-Clf system, or is, on the contrary, an integral and essential part of it, the <u>pis-aller</u> that enables that ambitious enterprise to which the Mien are committed by the typology of their language -- viz. the classification of the whole of reality -- to succeed at all.

3.4.215 <u>Measure Clf's</u>. These are used to quantify N 's h referring to entities, that are, or can be viewed, as nondiscrete, such as liquids, particulate substances, areas of land, stretches of road and so forth. They are usually referred to in English as mass nouns. Except for "abstract" measures, introduced from other languages, such as 'meter', 'liter', 'Chinese ounce' and so forth, they are mostly "concrete", i.e., derived by homonymy from either the noun for the thing which measures, or the verb for the action which measures.

Thus the noun <pienh> (L 13) means 'basin'. Now basins are discrete entities, and as (empty) items of equipment they can be counted: <pienh> is a N and takes its special h Clf <nawm>. But when rice is being measured by the basinful, <pienh> (or its homonymous derivative) is used as a

measure Clf: thus <i pienh byauh> `two basin(fulls of rice'. Similarly <paengh> `bottle; jar; container' (L 19) has this double usage and it is probable that the name of any container can be used as a measure-Clf (as, for instance, in Thai).

Un the other hand we have verbs of action from which measure Clf's are derived. Thus there is a verb (phwangv) 'to scoop up in two hands', from which is derived the homonymous measure Clf meaning 'a couble handful' as in (siac phwangv hmeiv> (L 43) 'seven double handfuls of rice'. Likewise (nyau> (L 268) 'to pick up or grasp in the hand' yields the measure Clf (nyau> 'handful', (tsamh> (L 160) 'to measure by stretching out both arms to full length' yields (tsamh> a measure-Clf for cloth, etc. Measure-Clf's homophonously derived from nouns and verbs are a cormonplace of South East Asian: and other, languages: c.f. English "a basin of rice", "a pinch of salt", "a finger of rum", etc. Some measure Clf's that are not "concrete" in the sense just defined are provided by nature itself rather than human intervention, such as (hnoi> 'day' and (hnyaangx> 'year'.

3.4.2151 <u>A selection of Measure Classifiers</u>. As with the other lists of classifiers, the present one makes no claim to completeness and shows some overlap with other kinds of Clf⁴s:

- (aax) for words or phrases of speech (cf. <jioux)); mouthfuls; small amounts
- <pienh> for basinfuls of rice

a portion, such as of grain

- for packages and bundles
- cpaav> for bundles of things
- <puv> for lumps of things
- (pui) for cups of tea (cf. <tsanv>); for matching halves of an object
- <puih> for certain kind of containerfulls, approximately one bushel
- for partitions or sections of walling
- (phou) for clumps, bunches, buncles

- <taangh> for moments of time (cf. <sih>)
- <touc> for periods of time
- (tawv) for bunches, clusters
- <daam> for shculder loads
- <diepv> for drops
- <dawqv> for cubits (from elbow to tip of middle finger)
- <dawnh> for U.S. dollars

- <thawngx> for stages of life; marriages; crops (cf. <tshaamx>; calamities
- <ihioux> for words or phrases of speech (cf. <jhoux>)
- <ipui> for basketfuls
- <khanx> for measuring weights: ore-sixth of a kilogram
- <khawqv> for measuring dry stuffs
- <ganx> for indicating half sections of a unit; according to my informant, the measure from the tip of the forefinger to the first joint (cf. <kweih>)
- (tsinh) for maces, a unit of weight of precious metals, one-tenth cf a <lungz>
- <tseuv> for bolts of cloth

(tsamv) for lengths of cloth and space

- <tsanv> for cupfuls
- (tsanv) for crcps (cf. (thawngx), used for rocting a 2 house)
- <tshaamx> for measuring time, a period from about twelve to twenty days; a "while"
- <feix/tshunh> for arm's reaches
- <sih> for moments of time (cf. <taangh>
- <simv> for counting lengths of thatch mats
- <senh> for U.S. cents
- <saengv> for measurements with a container made from
 small sections of bamboo
- (sutv) for bundles or rolls of bedding
- <hnci> for days

. ____

Chapter 111

for a cycle of twelve years <neix> for for hand spans <maamx> for years <hnyaangx> for open handfuls <nyau> for bundles of rice <nyum> for lengths of wood or banboo <ngagv> <hlengx> for slices, such as of fruit <hlamx> for sections of bamboc (i.e., that part between two joints for measuring precious metals, a Chinese <lungz> ounce, ten <ts inh>'s for verses or sections of a lyric <wuanc> for parts, verses, layers, sections or por-<yiemc> tions; suits of clethes for bowlfuls <yienv>

3.4.216 <u>Group Clf's</u>. Several Clf's referring to aggregates or collectivities may occur only with the Num (yietc) 'one', whether present or deleted in the surface structure. Here (yietc) has a meaning like 'all' cr 'whole'. Such are the Clf's (tsuav) (L 168) and (tswangx) (L 171): thus both (yietv tsunv mienh) and (yietc tswang) mienh) mean 'everyone; the whole group', although it does not seem possible to delete the (yietc) with (tsuanv). (maarc) 'all' (L 245) may perhaps be a group Clf, as in (maanc mienh) 'all the pecple', but if so it seems to have the feature that the Num (yietc) is obligatorily deleted.

The Clf <teix> means something like "someness": it is marker with in effect plural cemonstratives and interrogative/indefinites -- cf. <naiv teix mienh> `these people' versus <naiv mienh> `this person', while in adverbial phrases <teix> occurs with and without <yietc> meaning 'to some extent', e.g. <meih thuix tshlatv yietc teix> 'you back off a little' ("you withdraw move-cut one someness"), so that <naiv teix mienh> is literally and syntactically, "this someness of people", and is in inderlying structure <naiv yietc teix mienh> -- Dem Num Clf N -- "this one someness of people": see Figures 3(1X) and (X) in Section 3.11.

Being able to occur only with the numeral (yietc) 'one' is not the normal situation for group classifiers. In the following section we list some normal group classifiers.

3.4.2161 <u>A selection of group classifiers</u>. The following list does not claim to be exhaustive, and it has some overlap with other categories of Clf, especially with measure classifiers:

| <awtv></awtv> | for pairs (as flashlight batteries); not recognized by my informants |
|-----------------|--|
| <pom></pom> | for clumps of plants that grow in clumps, such as bamboo, pacdy |
| <puaqv></puaqv> | for groups of people |
| <pyauv></pyauv> | for families, households |
| <bia></bia> | for pairs of shoes (cf. <laengc></laengc> |

- <bomz> for a group of pecple -- seated according to Lombard (342), nct necessarily so according to my informants
- <tawv> for bunches or clusters
- <toix> for pairs or couples, such as people and flashlight batteries, but not shoes
- <toic> for generations of people
- <thawqc> for bunches, such as bananas
- <dui> for piles or groups
- <jhauv> for groups of travellers
- <jhoih> for bunches or clusters cf fruit; pyramidshaped sections of cross-stick designs
- <kwanh> for herds, crowds, groups
- <jiac> for doses or events in which several things happen at the same time (also <giac>)
- (ganx) for chunks, lumps; half sections of a unit
- (tsiu) for flocks of chickens
- <tsung> for clumps or clusters
- (sung) for pairs of things
- <houz> for households, families, clams
- <nanv> for tied-up bunches of vegetables

- <lawtc> for pairs of things such as flashlight batteries (cf. <awtv>)

3.4.217 <u>Round-number Clf's (Clf 's)</u>. These are the <u>ED</u> Clf's that refer to powers of ten: viz. <tsiepc> `tens',

3.4.218 <u>Quasi-Clf's</u>. The defining frame for a (lf is "Num-N", but Clf's also characteristically occur in the (surface) frames (a) "Demonstrative -- N" and (b) "Interrogative/Indefinite -- N": -- examples (a) <naiv tauh mienh> 'this person' ("this Clf person"), and (b) <haiv/ tauh> 'who?/anybody'. There are some words that can occur in frames (a) and (b) but not in "Num -- N". From a deepstructure point of view we would clair that frames (a) and (b) have undergone <yietc> ('one')-deletion and are underlying (a) "Demonstrative <yietc> -- N" and (b) "Intg/Indef <yietc> -- N" -- in other words, (a) and (b) actually <u>do</u> contain the criterial frame "Num -- Clf" but <u>the Num has to</u> <u>be</u> <<u>yietc></u> 'one', which is subsequently deleted.

In either case we can define a class of quasi-Clf's: surface structure-wise they cannot occur in "Num -- N" but they can occur in frames (a) and (b); deep structure-wise they can occur in "Num -- N", or "Num --", but Num has to be preceded by a Demonstrative (frame (a)) or Intg/Indef (frame

(b)), and Num can only be <yietc> 'cne', which is subsequently obligatorily deleted. Examples cf quasi-Clf's are <dau> 'ground', as in <uav dau> 'there' ("that ground") and <haiv/dau> 'where?/anywhere' ("which?/any ground"), and <naw> 'kind(?)' as in <mv naw> 'like this' and <hnangv haiv/naw> 'how?/anyhow' ("like which?/ary kind(?)"). Reduplicability may also establish another category cf quasi-Clf: see the case of <hlaax> 'month' in Section 3.4.2.2.

3.4.22 <u>Reduplication of Clf's</u>. The only use of the reduplication of Clf's that the investigator has discovered is to convey the meaning of 'every'. The first constituent of the reduplicative construction undergoes IS: e.g., (meih hnoi-hnoi taaih naïv) 'you come here every day', (bua luD-Mienh tauh-tauh maaih fuqv maaih loqc) 'every one of us lu Mien has wealth and happiness'. Ether examples are (nawmnawm) 'everything', (tawv-tawv) 'every clump'. The reduplicated Clf may be followed by its N : e.g., (tauh-tauh mienh) h

It should be noted that some words constitute a special category of quasi-Clf's: thus <hlaax> `month' is not a Clf because it requires the intervention of the Clf <nawm> in order to be counted: e.g., <i nawm hlaax> `two months'. Yet it undergoes reduplication like a Clf -- <hlaax-hlaax> `every month' -- and it is, as a natural measure of time,

- ..

semantically analogous to <hnoi> `day' and <hnyaangx>
`year', which are Clf's.

3.4.3 <u>A note on singular/plural as a grammatical</u> category in <u>Kienb</u>. Just as Chinese with its suffix men (AD #609.1) has the germ of the Indo-European style grammaticalized number, so does Mien tco, with its morpheme <bua> appended to pronouns and appendable to ncuns (see Section 3.2.6) together with its morpheme <teix> added to demonstratives and interrogatives/indefinites when their N is semantically 1+ Plurall contain the seeds of grammatical number. If kien were to develop further in this direction we could expect a priori a simultaneous decay of the nounclassification system.

3.4.4 <u>Polyquantification</u>. A polyquantificational expression, "QQ", is one which contains two or more Num + Clf combinations belonging to the same NP. QQ's may be subdivided into "QQ reduplications" (where the Q's are identical) and "QQ combinations" (where the Q's are different. QQ's reduplications that the investigator has come across are sequential in meaning and are syntactically adverbial phrases: e.g. (yieto pouc yieto pouc piago pouc) (L 207) "to make progress one step at a time? ("one stage/step one stage/step enter stages"). Diften the (nyei) that marks adverbial phrases is present: (ninh mingh dzyaauc

ninh nyei muaz-toic yietc tauh yietc tauh nyei> "he went to visit his brothers one after the cther" ("... "one person one person'-ly"). QQ reduplication cannot be generated by the PS-rules in Section 3.11 since they are patently the result of transformations.

The clearest case of QQ combinations the investigator has come across is in the case of large complex Num's, which contain sequences of structures containing Clf 's (see Secrn tion 3.4.2.1.7 above). If we consider deep structure as well, then we should consider constructions involving the plural number (teix) to be QQ combinations: these are generated by the Rule (8)(i) of the PS-rules in Section 3.11 e.g., (hlaang uav [yietc] teix i tauh mienh) 'those two tall persons' (see Figure 3(1X) in Section 3.11).

3.4.41 <u>Eractions</u>. The only fractions in common use in Mien are one-half, and Num-and-a-half. Half is expressed by (damv) joined by TS to the Clf: thus (damv-paengh uam) 'half a bottle of water' and Num-and-a-half by "Num Clf pienx", e.g., (pua hnyaangx pienx) (L 13) 'three and a half years'. In these expressions (damv) is grammatically a Num meaning 'half', and it undergoes TS before the following Clf, with which it is in multiplicative relationship. (pienx), on the other hand, while it also means 'half', is a Clf, with its Num (yietc) 'one' deleted, and is in additive relationship

to the quantificatory expression that precedes it. The presence of the Num (yietc) and the additive relationship can be made clear in periphrasis: thus (pua hnyaangx tshaux yietc pienx) "three years together-with one half".

3.4.42 <u>Independent_multiple_quartification</u>. This refers to the case where the individual Q's belong to separate NP's. The only case I have noted is in the stating of rates, e.g., (maaic pyouv yietc nawm i baatv> `to sell fruit at two baht apiece' ("sell fruit one piece two baht").

3.5. <u>Special types of NP (III): demonstrative NP</u>. These are simply NP's containing demonstratives. (See Section 3.2.4). The demonstratives, like kC's, may occur in either prenominal or postnominal position.

3.5.1 <u>Quantified_NP's_with_demonstratives</u>. These are derived in a quite straightforward way by the PS rules in Section 3.11 (see illustrative figures in Section 3.11 for examples).

3.6. <u>Special_types_cf_ncminal_nucleus_(IIII):_loca-</u> <u>tional_NP/s.</u> By locational NP's we mean NP's containing a specific-location noun meaning such things as `inside', `outside', `beside' etc., e.g., <kapv ka-nyuaz> `inside the box' ("box inside"), <naiv nawm pyauv gaD-haav> `behind this house' ("this Clf house behind"). The order of specific

location-noun and head noun may be reversed under circumstances that require further investigation. Likewise a postpositive demonstrative may be used in circumstances that require further investigation, e.g., (naiv gall-haav naiv) "behind this". In view of these uncertainties I have not tried to introduce specific location nouns in the PS rules of Section 3.11. Locational NP's are also discussed at Section 3.3.3.2.1.

3.7. <u>Subordinative_constructions_with_Snyei></u> These are introduced at two points in the NP by PS-rules (1)(v)--(2)(iv) and (3)(i)--(13). Rules (1)(v)--(2)(iv) introduce the "NP + <nyei>" construction which is possessive in meaning: e.g., <jhawn nyei pyauv> "John's house'. By Rule (2)(iv) the generation of "NP + <nyei>" structure is recursive, e.g., <jhawn nyei maa nyei aa0-dzyaauc/toic nyei pyauv> "John's mother's friend's house'.

The rule-sequence (3)(i)--(13) introduces (nyei) after relative clauses. Examples are ([tsov nyanc] nyei nawqc) 'a bird that is boiled before it is eaten' ("[boil eat] (nyei) bird"). It could be claimed that the possessive "NP nyei" structure and the specificatory "RC + ryei" structure are the same phenomenon and that I should not have treated them differently in the PS-rules. This is cuite possible: the question requires further investigation, but it should be noted that the possessive <nyei> is not omissible.[27] whereas the <nyei> after RC's may in certain cases be either replaced by <uav nyungc> (lit. "that kind") or omitted altogether.

<u>NP's with N deleted.</u> (a) N is usually deleted 3.8. in an appositional NP following a pronoun (generated by PS Rule 1(ii) of Section 3.11). Thus <pia/bua i tauh Ø mingh>[28] we two go' versus the full form < yia four i tauh mienh mingh> 'id.' ("we two Clf personis) go"); (b) Nh is usually omitted in quantified NP's used adverbially: e.g., (yia/bua mingh i tauh Ø>[29] 'Iwo of us went; we went <u>la deux/</u> versus the full <yiafbua mingh i tauh mienh> ("we qo two Clf person(s)"); <aengx taaih tauh B> (L 345), `and another one came ("yet come [sc. one] Clf"); (c) N can be omitted after preposed RC's, and this corresponds to substantivization of adjectives in European languages: e.g., <hlc nyei Ø taaih> (L 282) "the big one is coming" (" [big RC RELATIVIZER] come"), <hlo nyei uav nawm #> (62) 'that big RC one' (" [big RELATIVIZER] yon Clf"), <minh yangh jhuatv

[27] When quizzed my informants insist it is not omissible even after pronouns. The points needs further checking in natural speech, but since the Knyei> is under such circumstances normally reduced to a fleeting syllabic nasal, it is by no means easy to check. [28] "Ø" is written at the point where Nh would occur.

[29] In this and the following examples in this section "@" marks the spot where Nh has been deleted.

194.

• • •

uav tiuh Ø> (L 113) 'He went the roundabout way' ("He went [crooked] yon Clf(for routes)*), <maiv pun nyei uav teix</pre> RC Ø, laengx ninh/bua nyei ei> (L 287) \As for those who did not give [sc. an offering], take note of their [sc. good] intentions' (part of a prayer) (" Inot give RELATIVIZER] RC ÆC yon PLURALIZING-Clf acknowledge they PESSESSIVIZER intention"), < jhiax uav dau maengx i tauh Ø> (L 115) "the two who went over to that side' (" [cross-over that place side] RC two Clf"), (mingh tauh \$> (L 56) 'the one who went' [" [qo] Clf") (the last two examples are structurally RC ambiguous: as glossed they are NP's structurally the same as <touc tauh> `the one who carries a message' in Figure 3(VI) of Section 3.9; but they may also be VP's structurally identical with <touc tauh> in Figure 3(V11) cf Section 3.9, except that Num has not been deleted, and meaning respectively 'they went over to that side 'a deux', and 'went alone'; see Section 3.9).

It may be that what triggers deletion of N is not the h local structural description but the fact that the NP attached is <u>anaphoric</u>: note the following typical cases of anaphora <nv tauh Ø kauh feauv> (L 2CO) 'this one is more clever' ("this Clf more clever"), <i tauh Ø phuix tuqv jiac> (L 42) 'the two are compatible' ("two Clf be-matched be-able descend"). For examples of structures with N deleted see h Figures 3(XI) and 3(XII) in Section 3.11.

3.9. <u>Multiple_structural_ambiguity_partially_resolved</u> by_tone_sandbi. Multiword NP's shade cff into compound N's in one direction, and are to be distinguished from homophonous VP's in the other. In Figures 3(X)-3(XII) below we illustrate this point with the triplet (a) <touc-tauh> (L 64), a compound-N 'messenger' (with tone sandhi on <touc>) (represented in Figure 3(V)), (b) <touc tauh>, (without tone sandhi) representing (a) the NF, 'the one who carried the message' (represented in Figure 3(VI)), and (c) (phonologically identical to (b), except, perhaps, in intonation -- this needs further investigation) a VP 'carried the message alone' (represented in Figure 3(VII)). For examples and expansions of the various noces see PS rules in Section 3.11.

Note that in the example in the last paragraph tone sandhi only serves to distinguish the compound noun from the NP and the VP, but that the latter two are homophonous, and so structurally ambiguous. This situation seems to obtain quite generally for tone sandhi with reference to nominal phenomena, i.e., tone sandhi marks "vocabulicity", "lexicity", "wordhood" -- call it what you will -- i.e., the status of being a single word, when it inheres in a collocation of words. Dr, to put it dynamically, tone sandhi is part of "vocabulization" or "lexization" in Mien, the process whereby a collocation of words becomes a vocable or

single words[30]

^[30] The question of whether a collocation has the status of single word in a language is separate from the question of whether it belongs in the lexicon: common sense would indeed suggest that words which are derived in a perfectly regular manner from other words already entered in the lexicon need not themselves be entered into the lexicon. For instance, in English it would seem unnecessary to enter into the lexicon every word that begins with <u>non-</u> or ends with <u>maker</u> inasmuch as these are perfectly perspicious semantically and can be coined at will. But we should enter, for instance, <u>nonentity</u>, since that is not really the opposite of <u>entity</u>, and <u>shoemaker</u> and <u>watchmaker</u>, since in these post-medieval times the referents do not characteristically make shoes or, as the case may be, watches.

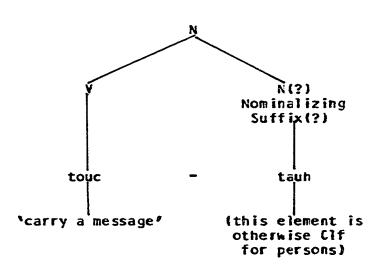
EIGURE_3(Y)

Ihe_structure_of_a_compound_noun

<touc-taub>_`messenger'.

Compound status marked by tone sandhi on V.

1

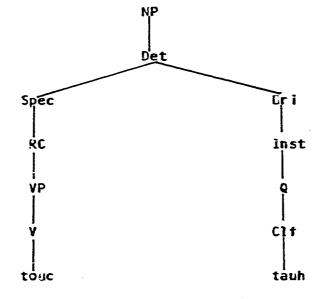


Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

EIGURE_3(VI)

Ibe_structure_of_the_beadless_NE_<touc_taub>

'the one who carries the message'



`carry a message'

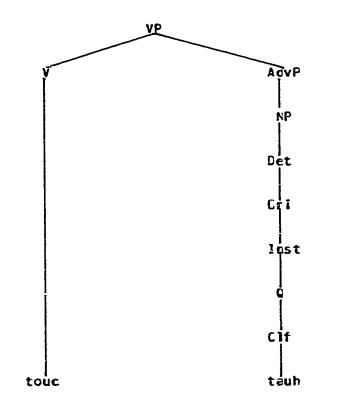
(C)f for human beings) 'the one'

This is an intermediate structure: the deep structure has a (head) N which is a sister to Det under the NP node, and a Num <yietc> `one' sister to Clf under the G node.

Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

EIGURE_3(YII)

<u>The structure of the VP <tous_taub></u> carried_the_message_on_bis/ber_own/



`carry a message'

(C)f for human beings)

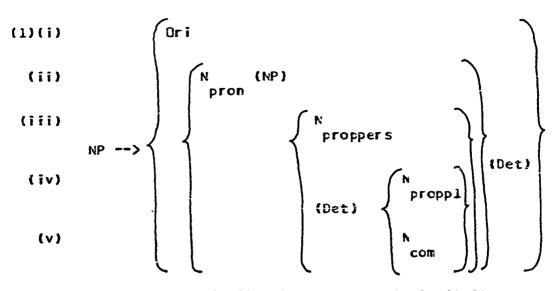
This is an intermediate structure with the same deletions as in Figure 3(XI). Guantified NP's under AdvP have the meaning 'alone', 'a geux', 'a trois' etc.

Note: For unexplained node-symbols see Sec. 3.11

3.10. NP's accompanied by particles. There are three forms that accompany NP's and might be considered particles: (a) the preposed hypocoristic (aa) with kinship terms: e.g., (aa tia> 'daddy'; (aa maa> 'mommy', (b) the postposed vocative (aa), e.g., (kawx aa> 'excuse me, sir' (to broach a strange man, lit. "O elder brother"), and (c) the postposed topicalizing particle (aeq), e.g., (meit nyei pyauv aeq ...) 'Now as for your house, ...'. However we have interpreted form (a) as a prefix (see Section 3.3.3.5.2.(a)), and form (b) as a suffix (see Section 3.3.3.5.2.(b)). As for form (c), we interpret it syntactically not as entering immediately into constituency with the NP as such, but with the topic, a higher-order entity (see Section 2.3.4).

3.11. <u>The structure of the NF in technical detail</u> <u>(PS rules)</u>. Here is a set of phrase-structure rules with which we can end our account of the NP. They are regrettably heavy reading and we hope that cur examples in the preceding sections of this chapter have been copious and lucid enough so that the present section can be skipped. For concrete examples of the rules, the reader is urged to refer constantly to Figures 3(VIII)-(XII) below. These are cross-referenced to the rules and exemplify each of them.

Chapter III



A NP may consist of (i) Drienter Phrasel31] (Dri), or (ii) a personal pronoun (N) optionally followed by an NP pron in apposition, optionally followed by a Determiner Structure (Det), or (iii) an anthroponym, or personal proper name (N), optionally followed by a Det, or (iv) an proppers optional Det followed by a toponym, or proper noun of place,

131] I would like to apologize for the neologisms in this section. They are necessitated by the old problem of naming the levels of a hierarchy: what do you do when you have distinguished more levels than there are terms in the current terminology? Une cculd just as well use abstract symbols but I believe that semantically motivated neologisms, however jarring, are easier for the human mind to process.

"Urienter" is a cover term for "Indicant" and "Instantiator". "Indicant" is a cover term for demonstratives and interrogatives. "Instantiator" is a cover term for numerals and classifiers -- also grouped here under the term "quantity-expression" (Q) (the later borrowed from Matisoff) -- ccined because it seemed convenient in the rule-writing tc insert an additional node immediately above "Q".

optionally followed by Det, or (v) an optional Det followed by a common noun (N), optionally followed by Det. com (2)(i) (2)(i) (ii) Dem/ Dem/ (Spec) Dem/N -com (iii) (iv) (NP nyei)(Spec)(Dri)=/ -- h com

At least one of the items in parentheses must be selected.

A Determiner Structure may consist of the following things according to grammatical context: (i) in the context following a pronoun followed by an optional NP, or the context following a proper noun (N), Det consists of a demonprop strative; (ii) in the context following a common noun Det consists of an optional specifier structure (Spec) followed by an obligatory demonstrative; (iii) in the context preceding a place-noun (i.e., a noun, proper or common, referring to a place), Det consists of a demonstrative followed by an optional spatial co-deictic (Spat -- see Section 3.2.5); (iv) in the context preceding a common neun Det consists of an optional structure of "NP + nyei", followed by an optional Spec, followed by an optional indicant[32] structure, followed by an optional instantiatcr[33] structure: of these four options, at least one must be selected.

The constitution of the specifier structure (Spec) requires further investigation, but it may be tentatively stated as follows:

(3)
(i)
Spec --> (Dem)
(ii)

$$RC \begin{cases} Sub \\ () \\ J -- (Cri)N \\ Ori \end{cases}$$

 $RC (Dri)/N --$

In the context preceding an optional Orienter Phrase and an obligatory noun, the Specifier Phrase consists of (i) an optional demonstrative followed by a Relative Clause (RC) and an optional Subordinator, or (ii) an optional Demonstrative followed by a Relative Clause followed by an optional Orienter phrase; in the context following a ncun the Specifier Phrase consists of a Relative Clause followed by an

[32] See preceding footnote. [33] See footnote before last. 204.

x

3

optional Urienter Phrase.

(4) Dri --> (Indic) (Inst)≠

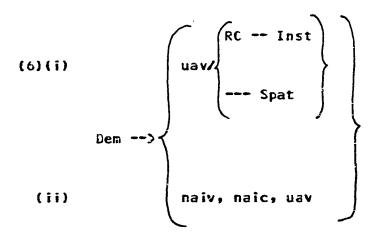
At least one option must be chosen.

The Drienter Phrase consists of an optional Indicant Phrase followed by an optional Instantiator Phrase: of these two structures at least one must be chosen.

 \sim

The Indicant Phrase consists (i) in NP-initial environment, of a Demonstrative or an Interrogative/Indefinite; otherwise (ii) the Indicant Phrase consists of a cemonstrative. Rules (4)(i) and (ii) are to be applied in the order in which they are numbered.

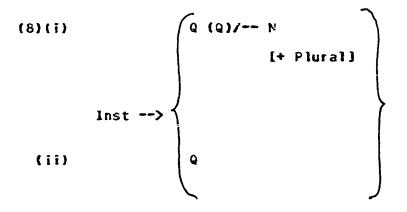
Chapter 111



(i) In the environment following a Relative Clause and preceding an Instantiator Phrase; and in the environment proceeding a Spatial Co-Deictic expression Demonstrative consists of <uav>; otherwise (ii) Demonstrative consists of either <naiv>, or <naic> or <uav>. Kules (5)(i) and (ii) are to be applied in the order in which they are numbered.

(7) Intg/Indef --> haiv

The Interrogative/Indefinite consists of <haiv> `which?/ any's



(i) In the environment preceding a noun with the semantic feature [+ Plural] the Instantiator Phrase consists of a quantity-expression followed by an optional quantityexpression; otherwise (ii) it consists of a quantityexpression. Rules (7)(i) and (ii) are to be applied in the order in which they are numbered.

(9) Spat --> jhiav, chaav maengx, maergx...etc.+

For the glosses, which are rather intricate, the reader is referred to Section 3.2.5 above.

Spatial Co-deictic consists of <jhiav>, or <chaav maengx>, or <maengx> ... etc. (See list at Section 3.2.5).

(10) Q --> Num Clf

207.

Chapter III

Quantity-expression consists of a Numeral followed by a Classifier.

Classifier consists (i) in the environment following a Numeral and preceding an optional quantity-expression followed by a noun with the semantic feature [+ Plural], of <teix> ("someness"), (ii) in the environment following a sequence of Relative Clause and <uav> respectively, of <nyungc> (`kind'), (iii) otherwise, of <tauh>, <nawm>, etc.

Chapter III

Numeral consists, (i) in the environment preceding <teix> (Clf, "someness") and in the environment following <uav> (Dem, 'yonder') and preceding <nyungc> (Clf, 'kind'), of <yietc> ('one'), otherwise (ii) Numeral consists of <yietc> ('one'), <i> ('two'), <pua> ('three') ... etc. (See Section 3.4.1 and subdivisions).

(13) Sub --> nyei

The Subordinator consists of <nyei>.

For an account of the entities not yet rewritten to terminal symbols -- i.e., Noun, N , N , N , N -proppers proppi com see the Sections 3.2 et seq.

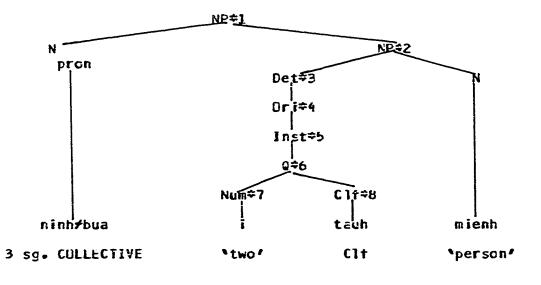
Here follow figures of tree diagrams illustrating the various rules. Various nodes are provided with reference numbers; at the corresponding number beneath the figure is indicated the PS-rule involved in the rewriting of the symbol. In Figure 3(IV) the introduction of the constituent QUEST and its placement vis-a-vis NP and VP is not germane to the structure of the NP and is a matter of expository convenience only.

EIGURE_3(VIII)

Phrase_Structure_of

Sninh:bua_i_taub_mienb2

<u>'lhe two of them; the two cersons'</u>



≠1 Rule (1)(ii) ≠4 Rule (4) ≠7 Rule (12)(ii)
≠2 Rule (1)(iv) ≠5 Rule (8) ≠8 kule (11)(iii)
≠3 Rule (2)(iv) ≠6 Rule (10)

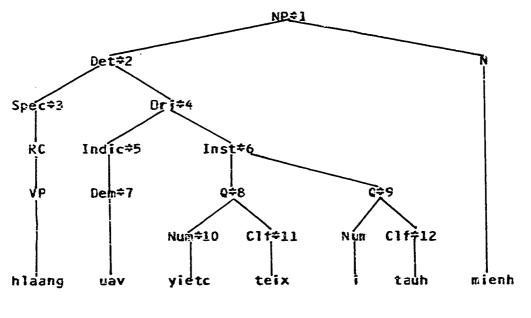
EIGURE_3(IX)

<u>Phrase_Structure_of</u>

Shlaang_uay_teix_i_taub_tienb2

Mincse_two_tall_persons'

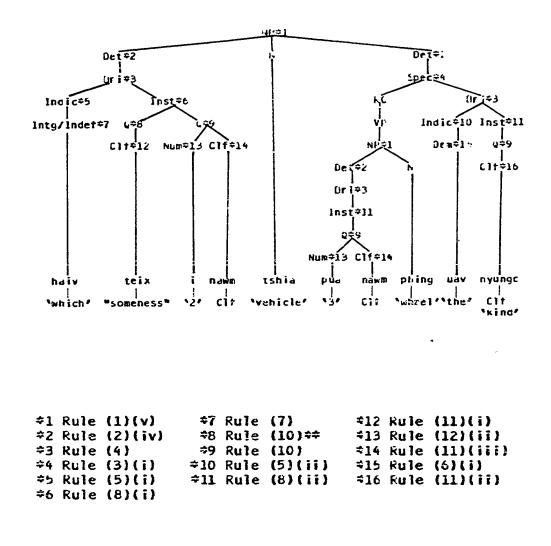
("Yonder_someness_of_twc_tall_persons")



'tall' 'yonder' 'one' "someness" 'two' Clf 'persons'

| ≑l Rule (l)(v) | ≑7 Rule (7) | ⇒12 Rule (11)(i) |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ≑2 Rule (2)(iv) | ≉8 Rule (10)‡≑ | ≠13 Rule (12)(ii) |
| ≑3 Ru]e (4) | ⇒9 Rule (10) | ⇒14 Ru]e (11)(iii) |
| ≑4 Rule (3)(i) | ≠10 Rule (5)(ii) | ⇒15 Rule (6)(i) |
| ≑5 Rule (5)(i) | ≑11 Rule (8)(ii) | ≑16 Rule (11)(ii) |
| ≑6 Rule (8)(î) | | |

⇒≠ <yietc> will be subsequently obligatorily deleted.





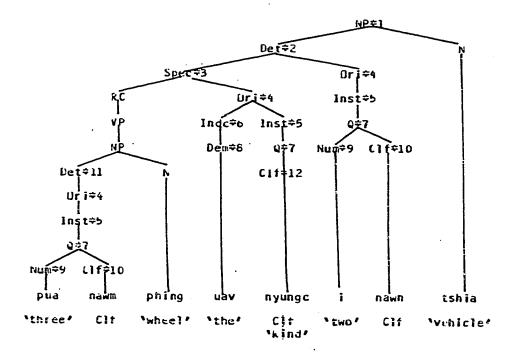
EIGURE_3(X1)

Phrase_Structure_cf

Spua_nawm_phing_uay_nyungc_i_nawm_tsbia>

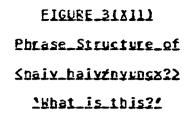
<u>The two three-wheeled vehicles!</u>

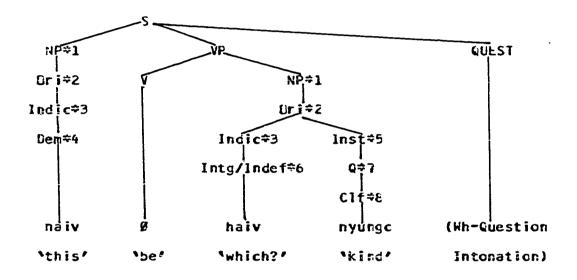
("lwo_the=three=wheels_L=havingl_kind_vehicles")



| ≠1 Rule (1)(v) | ≑5 Rule (8)(ii) | ≑9 Rule (12)(i!) |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| ≠2 Rule (2)(iv |) ≠6 Rule (5)(i) | ≠1C Rule (11)(iii) |
| <i>≑</i> 3 Rule (3)(i) | \$7 Ru]e (10) | ≠11 Rule (2)(iv) |
| \$4 Rule (4) | ⇒8 Rule (6)(i) | ≠12 Rule (11)(ii) |

1





| ≑1 Rule (1 | L)(i) \$4 | Rule | (6)(ji) | \$7 | Rule | (10)‡‡ |
|------------|-----------|------|---------|-----|------|----------|
| ≠2 Rule (4 | 4) ≑5 | Rule | (8)(11) | \$≈ | Rule | (11)(ii) |
| ≠3 Rule (5 | 5)(i) \$6 | Rule | (7) | | | |

⇒⇒ Num <yietc> subsequently deleted.

214.

ASPECTS OF THE VERB PHRASE AND CLAUSE

4.1. <u>The structure of the VE</u>. This is problematic in various ways but a simplified overview can be given as follows:

```
(a) (NP) (NP)
```

```
VP --> (AdvP) V (AdvP)
nucl
(b) Clause
```

A verb phrase consists of an optional adverbial phrase (AE) followed by a Verbal Nucleus, tollowed by (a) an optional NP, followed by another optional NP, or (b) by a clause (this embedded clause functions as object of V , nucl and will be discussed at (complex 5 below).

4.2. <u>Criteria_for_verbhocc_and_scme_associated_prob-</u> lems. As with Chinese, Lahu, Thai, etc., it is convenient to define verbs in Mien as that form-class which can occur in the syntactic environment immediately following the negative particle, i.e., for Mien, in the environment "/maiv--". This criterion is easily grasped, intuitively correct and easily applied, but there are a handful of forms that we have discovered that are problematical under this criterion, in terms of what we can call the secondary characteristics of verbs. These we will now ciscuss:

(a) <u>Eailure to appear in the positive</u>, while we take negatability to be the defining characteristic of verbs, a "verb" which can occur only in the negative is an aberrant phenomenon. Examples of these in Mien are to be found as follows:

- (i) in the <u>negative imperative locutions</u> (where <maiv> 'not' appears in its contracted form <mv>): <mv tuqv> (L 234), <mv tungv> (L 234), and <mv tungx> (L 234), all meaning 'con't'll] e.g., <mv tuqv mingh>, <mv tungv mingh>, <mv tungx mingh>, all meaning 'Don't gc!'. It should be noted that it is only as an imperative marker that <tuqv> does not appear in the positive (for other uses see below).
- (ii) in the expressions meaning `scarcely, hardly, not very' <mv kamh> (L 241), <mv naangc> (L 241): e.g., <mv kamh ko> (L 241) `rct very far', <mv naangc kaux nyanc> (L 241) `to have scarcely enough to eat' ("scarcely be-enough eat"); here too there is a homophonous form [] kam], which

[1] My informants do not recognize the second form, and say that the third form is characteristic of Thailand Mien.

might represent phonologically either (kamh) or (kamD->, that appears in the polysyllabic verbs (kamD-tsiav> (L 123) 'to be repelled by' and (kamD-dziax> (L 123) 'to be afraic; to be reluctant', which do occur in the positive;

- (iii) in the polite expression <mv chaqv>, <mv chaqc>
 (high tone according to Lombard (108), low tone
 according to my informants) `con't bother to', as
 in <mv chaqv tshau> (L 108) `Don't bother to hand
 it [to me]' (as said to a host who offers one, for
 instance, tea, implying, "1'll just help myself");
- (iv) in the expression <mv lamb> (L 241) `to lack place or occasion for', as in <mv lamh kawngv> (L 242) `to lack a suitable occasion to say Litl';
- (v) in the expression (mv kunv> (L 241) 'to not be concerned about', as in (mv kunv taic> (L 241) 'to show no concern about 1 the possibility of 1 dying': here there is a homophonous form (kunv> that appears in imperative expressions;
- (vi) in the expression <mv kaengh> (L 241) `not yet', as in <tsaah mv kaengh czengh> (L 241) `the tea is not yet used up';

(viii) in the expression <mv taih>[2] (L 65) of course; [2] L 65 spells this expression with a syllabic "n"

naturally', as in Kihomo, my taih maaih nyei; maaih, mv taih maaih nyei> (1 65) 'Poor (people), of course we have them; rich [people], of course we have them'; (viii) in the expression <mv paac> (L 234) but; however; also, as in Kninh kox nyei, mv paac mv donge haix age-maange> (L 234) 'He's old, but not particularly bad locking' ("He be-old Prt , but not be-as-much-as whichever assert be-unpleasant=look-at"), (yia gv paav oix nyei) (L 234) ****I also want scmer ("I also want *); because of the cubicus verbhood of Prt assrt these forms, we interpret these combinations in which a negative meaning cannot be discerned to be lexical units, and sc hyphenate them: -- <rtaih), <mv-paac).

(b) Eailure to appear in the negative. This, of course, should by definition exclude a form from verb status. But there is a verb (se) ~ (sue) (L 212; see also Section 2.3.4.2.2.) 'to be, to be the case that, to be a fact that', which is semantically virtually identical and syntactically virtually in complementary distribution with the verb (tseiz) (L 157) 'to be, to be the case, to be

-- -- <nv taih> -- as if the nasal did nct represent the
negative particles; my informants pronounce it as
spelled here.

correct', with the latter verb tending to be limited to non-assertive sentences, i.e., negative and interrogative sentences.

(c) Syntactic behavior in the negative not parallel to the positive: the case of <<u>mv pei</u>). Here is in Mien an expression (nv pei) (L 234) 'to be uncertain; to wonder; perhaps'. Now there is also a verb <pei> `to know' from which the just-quoted meaning of (mv pei) is deducible, although it is somewhat idiomatic, but not its syntactic behavior, for <mv peiv> in the above meaning is in effect a sentence-final particle; compare the sentences in (i) below, in which (pei) occurs positive and negative as a syntactically normal verb meaning 'to know', and the sentences in (ii) below, in which (my pei) is functioning as a sentencefinal particle: -- (i) <pei nyei hiuv nyei> (L 17) 'to know thoroughly" ("know ASSRT [and] kncw ASSRT"), <maiv pei tugv> (L 17) 'not know'; (ii) <ninh minch haiv/dau mv pei> (L 234) 'I wonder where he is going' ("he go where [1] wonder"), (ninhfnyei tawn-jhweiv taix ninkh taic aq mv pei) Maybe her son is going to kill her! ("Her scn kill her dead NEW-SII-ASP maybe*).[3]

[3] There is a perfectly analogous construction That in which the expression for 'not know' (maj ruu), is used sentence-finally.

[4] For narrative vividness the event is presented aspectually as if it had already happenec.

219.

în

In need of further investigation with regard to their secondary verbal characteristics are the morphologically exocentric forms (feix-pung> (L 157) 'to be square' ("fourside", morphologically Num + Auto-Clf), as in (pyei pung maaih nyei, mv paac mv feix-pung> (L 27) 'It has four sides, but it is not square', and (thinh-teic> (L 77), which is fundamentally a polar nominal compound, 'heaven and earth', used idiomatically to mean 'everything, everywhere, completely, utterly' (much as in English move heaven and earth) in ionized form: e.g.,

- (i) <hems thinh hems teic> (L 78) 'to scold up and down; to scold about everything" ("scold fabout] heaven [and] scold [about] earth");
- (ii) <lauh thinh lah teic> (L 78) 'to be an exasperatingly long time' ("be-as-long-a-time [as] heaven Land] be-as-long-be-as-long-a-time [as] earth"),

but appears un-ionized and verbalized, cr at least adverbialized, after the negative particle, in expressions such as <tscux kong maiv thinh-teic> (L 78) 'to work at a task but be unable to complete it' ("dc work not [dcing] heaven [and] -earth").

The above cases are the only forms we have discovered whose status as verbs is problematical, so that we can now

proceed to general remarks about verbs. Firstly, it should be noted that unlike Chinese but as in Thai, Lahu, etc., one and the same negative particle occurs before all verbs without exception: specifically 'not to have; for there not to be' is (mv maaih). Secondly, semantically, verbs, as might be expected, refer to events and states of affairs.

4.3. <u>Morphological aspects of the verb.</u> Mien is an isolating language, typical of the linguistic area made up by Chinese, Ihai, Vietnamese, etc., and verbs, like all parts of speech, are unchanging, having no morphology in the sense of <u>accidence</u>, i.e., paradigns of changes rung on certain parts of speech, of the Indo-European, Semitic or Indonesian type. However, we will follow Chao (1968) and Matisoft (1972) in using the word "morphology" to refer to processes of compounding, reduplication and elaboration of the verb phrase nucleus. For traces of a fossilized derivational morphology, see Section 2.4.1.1 above.

4.4. <u>Overlapping subcategories of verbs</u>. Some times an intransitive verb can be used transitively: e.g., the verb <phyatv> (L 43) means 'to slip past/out of line; to move beyond; to drop away', implying events that occur without human intervention, as in <burgv phyatv mic aq> (L 43) 'the bone has become dislocated', but it can also be used with a human agent (or at least an unintending human

agent) as subject and the thing that moves, literally or metaphorically, as object; as in <via main phyath mein nyei nyaanh dawth> (L 43) 'I won't let your soney be lost through oversight' ("I not let-slip-away your soney [so that it] falls lout of existence]").

The case of a verb which seems to be basically iagent], being able to occur with a subjectivalized nonintending "agent" seems rare in Mien. I have not come across any others. Perfectly productive, however, is the case where a verb that normally takes an agent and a patient, with the agent as subject and the patient as object, may have no expressed agent and take the patient in front of it as a topic: e.g., <ninh nyanc hnaangx, mv tuqv nyanc lai> "He ate the rice but not the vegetables' can become <hnaangx nyanc, lai mv tuqv nyanc> ("The rice, I(some agent)] ate, the vegetables, I(the same agent)], didn't eat").

Since almost any semantically transitive verb can enter into the second construction, it seems better not to set up two categories of verbs, [+agent, +patient] and [+patient], but to say that you have one subcategory, viz. transitive, which can always undergo agent-deletion and patienttopicalization (for further discussion, see below).

4.5.1 <u>Canonical form of verbs: monocrephemic. monoc</u> syllables. Simple verbs are made up of a single morpheme, and verb morphemes, like all morphemes in Mien, are in the great majority of cases monosyllabic. Examples of simple, monosyllabic verbs will be found on almost every page of this study, and there is no need to mention any here. What was said above in Section 3.3 regarding nouns applies <u>mutatis mutandis</u> to verbs: viz, when confronted with a polysyllabic string whose most important component seams to be a verbal morpheme, the analyst only has two likely alternatives to consider: either the string is a syntactic construction, consisting of more than one word, or it is a composite verb.

Yet some constructions are of an intermediate nature, for morphological compounds and syntactic constructions are situated along an axis of productivity of combination which is more like a continuum than a series of discrete components. And indeed the polysyllabic string may be neither morphological compound nor syntactic construction but simply a polysyllabic single verbal morpheme.

4.5.2 <u>Some verbs of dubious mcrphemic structure:</u> <u>polysyllabic verb morphemes or compound verbs</u>? We have three situations, the first two of which are inherently

dubious and the third may in fact be dubicus because hard to separate from the second: viz, (1) polysyllabic verb morphemes, (2) verbs containing an icentifiable morpheme together with a morphan, and (3) compound verbs. As with nouns we will separate every syllable by a hyphen whether identifiable as a morpheme or not. Assignments to category (1) or (2) are of course provisional, since someone may come along and identify the component syllables as morphemes.

4.5.3 <u>Polysyllabic_verbs</u>, E.g., <laqU-khuqv> (L 288) 'to forget', <dzaqU-hleng> or <dzaeqE-filengx> (L 187) 'to lie on one's side', <tunU-yun> (L 73) 'to be perfect', <tingx/laaih> (L 62) 'to disappear, become lost', <kamUdziax> 'to fear', <kamU-tsiav> 'tc find repugnant', <fieUneic> 'casual, unhurried', <laeng/kaeng> (L 287) 'tc be naked'.

Ut these <kamB-dziax> 'to fear' and <kamD-tsiav> 'to find repugnant' can be suspected of belonging to category (2) because of semantic similarity: can we, or could one once, extract a morpheme <kamD> with identifiable meaning and tone? On the other hand <laeng≠kaerg> may be suspected of actually being a compound because it is separately reduplicable: <laeng≠laeng≠kaeng-kaeng> (L 267) 'to be naked^c...

4.5.4 <u>Verbs_containing_an_identifiable_morpheme</u> <u>tegether_with_a_morphan.</u> E.g., Khung[~heic> (L 223, 230)

'to be easy' where <hungD-> is mysterious, but <heic> (L 223) exists alone, with the same meaning. Parallel to this is the case of <laiD-hlopv> (L 289) 'to be dirty, filthy, defiled', where <laiD-> is mysterious, but <hlopv> on its own means pretty much the same thing as the disyllabic form (L 282). An interesting set of cases begins with the syllable

- (i) <taqB->: <taqB-bienv> (L 64) 'to be inside out' versus <bienv> (L 15) 'to turn something over';

- (iv) <taqU-dzyaaux> (L 65) `to lie on one's back', which has no form <dzyaaux> attestec.

The interesting point is that for <taqU-gaangx>, at least, there is a by-form attested, <taauxfgaargx> (L 68), in which <taaux> is itself a free verb morpheme (L 68) meaning `to turn around to the opposite side, to turn about face; to turn against; to be cross-eyed'.

New <taqU-> could be a reduced from cf <taaux>, so that it is basically a question of the <u>sprachgefuhl</u> of each idiclect-speaker: if he considers <taqU-> to be a reduced <taaux> then all the above forms are verb compounds; if he does not, then they are not. In any case it does not seem that we can account for <taqU-lengv> (1 tb) 'to be reckless and daring' in this way. Now there are quite a number of disyllabic <u>nouns</u>, and a rather lesser rumber of <u>verbs</u>, containing a reduced first syllable, and in some cases the reduced syllable can be identified with either a free form, cr at least a less-reduced bound morpheme, and in some cases it cannot.

4.5.5 <u>Verb compounds</u>. Much work remains to be done here. For instance, taking Chao (1968) as our criterion, because of the typological similarity between Mien and Chinese, we need to investigate how easy and useful it would be to set up for Mien the full range of compound types he sets up for Chinese, viz. subject-precidate compounds of verbal meaning, co-ordinate compounds, subordinate compounds, verb-object compounds, subordinative compounds, and complex compounds. Let us here give a sketchy account of what we know in this area, further noting that any combination of "V + V" is a case of verb serialization and we have not yet finalized a methodology for deciding whether such a sequence is a single word, i.e., is dominated by a "V"-node or not. Uur remarks then are tentative.

4.5.51 <u>Co-ordinate compounds</u>. Here the problem is to decide whether the sequence of verbs really is a <u>single word</u> or is a case of <u>conjunction reduction</u> with the structure and meaning of 'to V and to V' or 'Adj and Acj'. Let us venture some apparent examples:

- (i) <taauxfgaangx> (L 68) 'to turn around ' (see above),
- (ii) <pien/naaic> (L 13) 'to question thoroughly and firmly' (<pien> (L 13) 'to interrogate; investigate; enquire about', <raaic> (L 258) 'to ask or enquire');
- (iii) <taic/tswang> (L 171) 'to die' (<taic> (L 65) 'to die', <tswangc> (L 171) 'to die' (slang)),
- (iv) <paeqc+bouc> (L 49) `cream cclcred; soft white'
 (<paeq> (L 19) `be-white', <bouc> (L 49) `to be
 off-white in color'),
- (v) <opvftshweix> (L 8) 'to become agec, brittle or mildewed' (<opv> (L 8) 'to be mildewed or rotten; to be brittle', <tshweix> (L 184) 'to be fragile, breakable, easily spoiled').

These are synonymous or nearly synonymous compounds, of which outright identity of the components, in the form of reduplication might be considered the limiting case: e.g., <phing/phing> `to rcl!' (L 37) (<phing> (L 37) `to roll'), as in <tsoux phing/phing> (L 37) `to make roll' (Query: compound word? Or syntactically compound predicate made up of separate words by conjunction reduction?).

Reduplicated words may also enter into cc-ordinate compounds: e.g., <banv-banv≠buav> (L 51) 'to be completely blurred' (<banv> (L 51) 'to be incistinct, blurred', <bauv> (L 53) 'to be dim, blurred (of vision)'), but since the compound <banv≠buav> also exists, we may perhaps regard it as underlying, and <banv≠banv≠bua> as derived from it by partial reduplication, yielding a structure <banv≠banv≠buav>.

In connection with co-ordinate conpcunds there sometimes appears a syllable (kuqv), as in (1) (bopv kuq paeqc) (L 52) 'to be very white' ((bopv) (L 52) 'be white, bright, light', (paeqc) (L 19) 'be white'), and (2) (banv kuv buav nyei) (L 51) 'to be completely indistinct and blurred'. This syllable requires further investigation.

4.5.52 <u>Subordinative_compounds</u>. These V + V compounds show tone sandhi (a fairly good sign that they are single words and not syntactic combinations): e.g.,

- (i) <siqv-lunx> `light red' (<siqv> `rea', <lunx> `be young; be-light of hue');
- (ii) <siqv-kox> 'dark red' (<kox> 'be-clc; be-dark of huc');

In all the V + V subordinative compounds the head verb is on the left and the modifier is on the right. The only exception we have found is the bound intensifier $\langle tom U \rangle$ (L 71), which is identical with an augmentative bound form found with nouns151 (see Section 3.3.5.2(a)).

The point is that since it is bounc, and occurs compounded with both nouns and adjectives its part-of-speech membership is hard to establish. It could be a verb meaning "be big; manifest greatly", or perhaps it is better regarded as a prefix: e.g., <tom0-muanc> "be exceedingly fine", (tom0-faix> "to be exceedingly small". In these forms the semantics, i.e., smallness, show that <tom0-> has lost any idea of bigness and simply become an intensifier. Morphologically it can also come into constituency with verb forms that are already compounds: e.g., <tom0=paecc/bouc> (L 19)

[5] My informants use it with neuns but do not accept its use with verbs, so there might be some local variation here.

`to be extremely light skinned' (for explanation of cpaeqcf
bouc> see above, this section.

4.5.53 <u>Psychorcollocations: are they compounds or</u> <u>syntactic constructions?</u>[6] These are widespread (universal?) morpheme-combinations, consisting of the "psychonoun", the word for an internal organ conceptualized as the seat of emotions and thoughts, and a "psycho-mate", usually an action verb or adjective, completing the meaning of mental event, mental state, or personality characteristic. Mien shows here the same complication that it does with numerals -- namely the use of both native and borrowed (ex. Chinese) words: thus the native psycho-noun is (hnyiouv)

16] The term is taken, like so many ideas in the present work, in this case from Matisoff (1985), to which we have not had access but which by the author's admission inspired Jaisser's (1585) work on Hmong, to which we have had access only to the handout. There we find the following explanation (which may or may not be a quote from Matisoff (1985):

"PSYCHO-COLLECATION: polymorphemic expression referring as a whole to a mental process, quality, or state, one of whose constituents is a 'psycho-noun', i.e. a noun with explicit psychological reference (translatable by English words like HEART, MIND, SPIRIT, TEMPER, SUUL, DISPOSITION, MODD). The rest of the psycho-collocation contains morphemes (usually action verbs or adjectives) that complete the meaning. ... Thus:

Psycho-noun + Psycho-mate - Psychocollecation (Matisoff:1985)

In Hmcng: Psycho-noun SIAB 'liver' + psychomate, Psycho-mate + psycho-ncun SIAB 'liver' (L 263), meaning psychologically 'heart; mind; center of the personality' and physiologically 'the alimentary canal',[7] while from Chinese they have a single etymon ((AD #8G1)) represented with two vocalisms, <tin> and <fiem>.[8] As with Thai, putting the noun first usually denotes a permanent characteristic, e.g., <fim/faix> (L 195) 'to be (by nature) timid, cautious, careful, restrained' (<faix> (L 198) 'be small'), while putting the V first usually denotes a temporary state, e.g., <faix-fim> (L 195) 'to be careful or cautious (on a particular occasion)'. (Cf. Thai <u>cay dii</u> 'to be kind (by nature)' versus <u>dii cay</u> 'to be glad').

If these combinations were <u>syntactic</u>, the "N + V"

[7] The full translation of the word, as given in Lombard (263) before the list of collocation, is 'heart; mind; center of the personality; (physiologically conceived) the canal running from the mouth through the throat and and intestines to the anus'. Note that as a physiological conception this represents the alimentary canal and does not correspond to Thai cay 'heart', Chinese (AD #801) 'heart', or hmong <u>siab</u> 'liver'.

[8] Mien shares with Hmong its propensity to use this Chinese etymon in psycho-collocations:

"'xeeb' is the Hmong pronunciation of the Chinese word for 'heart', regarded as the seat of the affections and in this sense equivalent of the Hmong 'sizb'. It is found in many words involving the affections or mental activity and taken wholly or in part from the Chinese:"

(Heimbach 1979:406, cited in Jaisser 1985:12).

structure would have the constituent structure "Topic Comment", meaning roughly "with regard to the heart, a state of smallness exists", while the "V + N" construction would have the constituent structure "V + locative N" ("a state of smallness exists in the mind"). Whatever their syntacticomorphological status, both kine of psycho-collocation can function as a comment, and for such a comment the topic has to be at least I+ sentient] and 14 agent1 if not 1+ human].

Given the fact that they mostly refer to a temporary mental event or state, between the topic and comment with "V + N^w psycho-collocation the verb "feels", "experiences" or "manifests" has to be mentally supplied, so that, for in-**#NP/taix** f im* stance. а structure *NP means experienced/manifested being-small in the heart". But the semantic question arises why the verb supplied in this case is a temporary one, viz. "feed/manifest on a particular occasion", rather than "be (permanently) characterized by". Perhaps the secret is in the presence of the locative: for if we compare the faraway language of Russian, we find that there too the essentially locative verbal crefixes have a constraining effect on the generality of the aspect of the verb.

Let us note too, that, regarded as a <u>compound</u>, the "N + V" structure corresponds to Chao (1968:665)'s category of

"adjective" and the "V + N" structure to Chao (cp. cit.)'s "status verb". I shall argue below that the psycho-noun refers to an inalienable part of the self, and that as such it cught to be <u>subject</u> in terms of grammatical relations, and that to reduce it to the status of <u>chlique object</u>, as in done in the "V + N" structure, is to produce a marked sentence type, a "displacement" in Nichols (1975)'s terms.

In order to decide whether these psycho-collocations are verbal compounds or, as Marchard (1866) calls them, "syntactic groups", we might have recourse, <u>mutatis</u> <u>mutatis</u> <u>tandis</u>, to the two criteria Warutamasintop (1975:453) proposed to settle the question in Thai for "N + V" collocations that are nominal:

(1) <u>Selectional_restrictions</u>: If the psycho-noun cannot co-occur with verbs in a liberal way, e.g., if it can occur with only a limited number of verbs, then it is likely that collocation is a compound: further investigation is required here, but it is our impression that "psycho-ncuns" in Mien have only a defined set of possible "psycho-mates".

(2) <u>Semantic unpredictability</u>: If the psychocollocation is not understood as the <u>sum of the consti-</u> <u>tuents</u>, it must be a compound: for instance, in <hnyicuv gaai> (L 263) 'to be satisfied, cortent', but meaning literally "the heart is dry", we would appear to have an

unpredictable meaning, [9] and we are fairly confident that further investigation would reveal more such.

By these criteria, I venture to say that Mien psychocollocations are compounds not syntactic constructions, but I wonder whether Warutamasintop's criteria are not calculated to identify <u>idioms</u> rather than compounds, and idioms, as we know, are not specified as to grammatical form: they may be sentences, phrases or compound worcs. So for myself at this point the grammatical status of psycho-collocations is uncertain -- as indeed it may be in ontological reality.

4.5.531 <u>Psychercollocations. "heart"-extraction. and</u> <u>crossplanguage_typology_of_sentence-construction.</u> It is an areal feature of Southeast Asia, China and Japan that they avoid using the verb 'to have' with <u>inclienable possessions</u> of which something is being predicated: i.e., they say "(with regard to) ellephants, the nose is long", in the "double subject construction", in preference to "ellephants have

[9] Of course this example may cnce have been (may still be (?)) well-motivated in terms of an indigenous humoral theory of mental state and dispositions.

long noses". It is a further areal feature (how widespread I don't know) to extract the seat of the emctions out of the sentient being's "self" and treat it as a <u>separate argument</u> to a predicate of mental character, making it the "inner subject" in a double subject construction: i.e., to produce sentences of the type "John, the heart is small"; i.e., sentences with a comment made up of psycho-ncun 4 psycho-mate, where European languages would use a predicative adjectiveof-character such as 'timid'. Now given the propensity of Mien and its neighbors to "discretize" the seat of the emotions with the totality of the self and make it a separate argument -- gramatically the <u>subject</u> of the psychological predicate [10] -- we might take the view that the treatment

[10] This casts doubt on universal theories of logistructure that regard the number ct "arguments" cal with "predicates" of various types as non-It is typical of such theories to reproblematical. gard predicates of mental qualities such as be timid or mental events such as <u>get a supprise</u> as one-place predicates (semantically involving a "patient" or an "experience" as their single argument). I would argue that languages of the Southeast Asian type enable us to see that a human "argument", or self, is not simple -it can be divided into (i) a "heart" and the remainder, as two separate arguments, (ii) the physical person and the remainder as two separate arguments, (iii) the space occupied by the physical person and the remainder as two separate arguments, and sc on. Furthermore, the distinction between "arguments" and "predicates" is not clear: thus, for instances, in a sentence such as \underline{I} am talking about lim, it would probably be said that about is a "predicate", whereas it is clear in (some) Southeast Asian languages that is is an argument extracted from the complex of an ontological "entity" or "identity", and meaning `subject' cr `(subject) matter': e.g., Thai `speak about X' is "speak subject x", and it is clear that <u>subject</u> is an <u>argument</u> (a loof the "heart" as a <u>locative</u> in psycho-collocations of the form "V + N" is a <u>failure of subject selection</u>, an instance of a shift from the normal sentence pattern, to a <u>marked</u> <u>sentence type</u> or as Nichols (1975) terms such shifts, a "displacement". Typologically this brings Mien and its neighbors into the language-type tha <u>undergoes "displace-</u> <u>ment" with psychological predicates</u>, in this case. (by tendency) psychological predicates denoting a temporary state.

According to Nichols (1975:350-351) "specific displacement patterns, or a general absence of cisplacements, lwhere not internally conditioned, are <u>remarkably conservative</u>, and] could be diagnostic for genetic reconstruction ... We may have discovered an area of <u>syntax</u> sufficiently stable to support <u>genetic</u> hypotheses". (Emphasis curs).

Nichols' view may seem convincing in Indo-European, Finno-Ugric and the Caucasus, where there is lots of morphology to back up the syntax, but in the linguistic habitat of Mien, where syntactic patterns seem eninently borrowable,

cative one), because one can add the locative-verb <u>arrive</u> -- "speak <u>arrive</u> subject X" -- without changing the meaning. <u>In sum</u>: Southeast sian languages cast doubt on the universality of "precicate-argument" logic in two ways: (1) they split "arguments" and thereby add extra "places" to "predicates", (2) they treat as "arguments" what the logician would regard as "predicates". It is time, I would claim, that the "logic of language" was re-evaluated in the light of Southeast Asian languages.

including change of basic word order, Nichols' proposal doesn't look very convincing. But perhaps it is worth looking for further evidence of "displacement" and seeing if we can work out a general typology refired enough to yield a "displacement profile" for each language in the area.

4.5.6 <u>Reduplication in verbal structures</u>. Since we are taking the conventional view that reduplication is a morphological process, not a syntactic one, we must first point out some cases that we interpret as pseudo-reduplication, because they are syntactic, i.e., dominated by "V", but not by "V". The syntactic construction "V + a homophonous nominal form": the latter may be either (a) a verb followed by a homophonous V-Clf as a cognate object, e.g., <diqv diqv> "to kick a kick" (with the numeral (yietc) uncerstood before the Clf, or (b) a verb followed by an autonomous noun object, as "to cross-stitch cloth-which-isin <tshongx tsongx> being=cross-stitched", i.e., 'tc do cross-stitching": cf. English 'to eat eats', or better still, 'to drink drink'. It is, however, arguable that <tsongx/tsongx> is a single lexical item, and thus by some kinds of reasoning, a conpound.

4.5.61 <u>Reduplication without_tone_sandhi</u>. There is no tone sandhi here and it is arguable that we are simply dealing with a syntactic entity: a reduced conjunction of two

237.

identical predicates: as if one said in English he ran, ran instead of he ran and ran: e.g., <tsoux phing/phing> (L 37) 'to make roll' (rather "to make roll and roll", i.e., a syntactic conjunction of V's); <uam phaev phaev> (L 349) 'the water is bubbling', <dzioux dzuge saetv saetv teix> (L 212) 'to give the knife a few strokes on the whetstone' ("whet knife rub rub [one] someness").

Sometimes the first instance of the reduplicand has a high dragged-out intonation: e.g., <mi-i-ingv mingh> `on and on they went', ("[they] go-o-o go"), <czua-a-anv dzuanx> `back, back they went' ("[they] gc-ba-a-ack gc-back").

While it is arguable that these repetitions of actionverbs simply represent the surface structure "L V VJ " or VP VP perhaps even " VP VP] ", i.e., a syntactic conjunction of VP VP "V + V" or "VP + VP" under "VP" with the semantics of repeated events, we do also find repetition without tone sandhi with adjectives: <multiple</pre>description without tone sandhi with adjectives: <multiple</pre> description without tone sanbe addescription without tone sanstances of the action reference, to happening. The last pattern brings us to our next pattern of reduplication.

4.5.611 <u>Reduplication_of_the_verb_without_tone=</u> <u>sandhi._followed_by_the_particle_<uay>.</u> See the last exam-

ple in the preceding section. Presumably the morpheme (uav) which in other cases means 'that' or 'there' in some way makes the expression more vivid. Ether examples comprise both action verbs and adjectives: (jhuv jeic jeic uav) (L 103) 'the dog is baring his teeth', (hwei hwei uav) (L 300) 'they're sprouting up al over', (lui-houx feev feev uav' (L 196) 'the clothing is all torn and tattered, (byaauz pomh pomh uav) (L 25) 'the suds team all over the place'.

4.5.612 <u>Reduplication_of_the_verb_without_tone</u> <u>sandhis_the_elements_separated_by_the_intensifier/extensif</u> <u>fier_morpheme_{taax2</u>. Soth action verbs and adjectives may be involved, e.g.,

- (ii) <lopc taax lopc nyei taaih> (L 57) 'to come galloping in' in which <lopc taax lopc nyei> is functioning adverbially (for reduplication in adverbial phrases, see below).

4.5.613 Some generalizations on recuplication so far:

- (1) It has not involved tone-sanchi.
- (2) It has involved both action-verbs and adjectives (for this distinction see below).

(3) It has conveyed an idea of emphasis or vividness, with an action occurring repeatedly or a state appearing in many places or everywhere.

4.5.614 <u>Reduplication on adverbial phrases</u>. Here we sometimes find tone sandhi, sometimes nct, so the subject is treated in the section below on reduplication with tonesandhi.

4.5.62 <u>Reduplication with tore-sanchi</u>. This can only occur with adjectives or status verbs (see below for subcategorization of verbs): $e \cdot g \cdot g$

- (i) <tsaux om taaih pyawtv-pyawtv> (L 35) *the foot has swollen up' (*foot swell PERF be-distended=be distended*),
- (ii) <hlo-hlo> 'very big' ("big-big"),
- (III) <syang-syang> "brand new" ("new-new").

4.5.621 <u>Reduplication in adverbial phrases</u>[11] Keduplicative adverbial phrases may either precede or follow the main verb: in the post-verb position we have

(i) <tsaux om taaih <u>pyaty-pyawty</u>> (L 35) 'the foot swell PERF <u>distendedly-cistencedly</u>' and

[11] For explanation of the category adverbial phrase see below.

(ii) (dzioux dzugc <u>saety saety teiz</u>) (L 212) 'to whet the knife with a few rubs'.

When the reduplicative adverbial phrase precess the verb it may or may not show tone sandhi, but it may be followed by the subordinating particle (nyei) and in this case no tone sandhi occurs: $e \cdot g \cdot y$

- (i) <ninh haiz dauh-mauh <u>isawpy isawpy hyei</u> ming>
 (L 169) 'they heard the tiger padding noiselessly along' ("... noiselessly-pad noiselessly-pad
 (nyei> go"),
- (ii) <byungc <u>phyazi nyei</u> jiac> (L 43) *the rain is coming down lightly' (*rain <u>sprinkle sprinkle</u> <<u>nyei></u> <u>descend</u>*).
- (iii) <<u>lopc taax lopc nyei</u> taaih> (L 67) `to come swarming in'.

Examples without <nyei>:

- (i) <<u>nongx nongx</u> tshawng> (L 183) 'to consider the meaning carefully' ("<u>be-good=be-cood</u> considermeaning") (Query: Shoulon't the AcvP have tone sandhi?)
- (ii) <<u>manc-manc</u> tsoux> (L 243) 'do it gently; take your time doing it' (<manc> (L 243) 'be slow, gradual,

241.

•

unhurried'.

4.5.622 <u>Reduplication of compounds</u>. This takes form either as (1) "A-A=B-B", as in (i) (laeng/lang/kaengv/ kaengv> (L 287) 'be naked" (claeng/kaengv> (L 287) 'to be naked, unclothed'), (ii) <kox/kox/hnyatv/hnyatv> (L 263) 'to be old and bent' ("be-old=be-cld=be-stcoped=be-stcoped"), <kox/hnyatv> 'to be old and bent', or (2) "A-A=B" (or is it "A=A-B"), as in (banv-banv/buav> (L 51) 'to be completely blurred'.

4.5. Secondary features of verbs: Subcategorization.

(1) <u>Combinability with (taic) as intensifier</u>. We can by this distinguish a subcategory of verbs, viz. adjectives (V): e.g., (dzweic taic) 'look very good'. As a man verb adj (taic) (L 192) means 'to die', and we can identify the use of the verb 'to die' as an intensifier after adjectives as an areal feature: cf. Thai <u>suay ca taay</u> '(id.'). With verbs referring to action, which we will call action verbs: and further distinguish below the use cf a following (taic) creates a resultative complement meaning 'and die; to death': e.g., (dawty taic) 'fall to one's death'.

(2) <u>Combinability_with_<tsienz>_as_superlativizer:</u> e.g., <dzweic tsienz> `to look extremely good'. This morphere cannot be used with action-verbs.

(3) <u>Combinability_with <tingc> as_superlativizer:</u> with y possible: e.g., <dzweic tingc> `best locking'; with adj y forms a resultative complement meaning `to the end'. action

(4) Combinability_with_<jbieny>as_a_progressive_aspect
marker:

- (i) with V not possible unless supported by adj (mingh), which as a main verb means 'to go' with the meaning of steady intensification: e.g., (dweic jhienv mingh myei) 'to keep getting more and more good-looking';

- (v) Use in reciprocal constructions: with V , not adj possible (except in a few cases with special mean-

ings); with V , possible where the V takes an act act act NP complement (DD, ID cr oblique).

- (vi) Use in reduplicative constructions: (a) with VS an intensified meaning: with V , possible (with i de some restrictions (?)), with V , not possible act (with some exceptions, with special meanings); (b) without TS, followed by particle (uav), meaning 'to be V 'ing all over the place: V (?), adi act V , possible, but perhaps cnly with intransiact tives.

4.6.1 <u>Auxiliaries (Y</u>). The criteria above serve to <u>aux</u> distinguish active verbs from adjectives. More research is needed to establish the syntactic distinguishing marks of auxiliaries (V) -- it is roughly that they take VP comaux plements in surface structure -- and we shall simply list some auxiliaries identified semantically:

- (1) <oix> `want to'; negative <mv cix>. It is followed by a VP.
- (2) <tsuqc>, <aa/tsuqc> or <cix/tsuqc> `must, have': negative <mv tsuqv> `no need to'.
- (3) <tsuqc> + { (NP) /V NP]: This is a kind of pas-Ci 1 act 2 ... sive. NP must be coreferential with the subject/topic 2 of <tsuqc> or an inalienable part of it.
- (5) <tuqv> following a V: 'V is possible, can V'.
- (6) <khuv> + VP: 'be pleasant to VP'.
- (7) Kac> + VP: `be unpleasant to VP'.
- (8) <mv tuqc> + VP: (prohibitive) 'Don't VP!'
- (9) <mv tsugc> + VP: (prohibitive) 'Dor't VP!'
- (9) <mv tugc> + VP: (prohibitive) 'Don't VP!'
- (11) <mv chaq) + NP: (polite prohibitive) 'Don't bother to'.
- (12) <mv kamh> + VP: "scarcely, haroly, not very VP".

(13) <mv naangc> + VP: `scarcely, hardly, not very VP'.

(14) Kmv lamh> + VP: Mack place or occasion to VP'.

(15) <mv kaeng> + VP: 'not yet VP; haver't VP'ed yet'.

. (16) <kunv> + VP: (permissive-imperative) 'Go ahead and VP!; lt's okay to VP'.

Further investigation is needed to establish a syntactic definition of, and other aspects of auxiliaries in Mien.

4.7. Basic word order in the clause. Mien is a SVŰ language, but like its neighbors it may put the grammatical object first as a topic: thus "X <bawqc> Y" 'A hits Y' may, under certain pragmatic conditions beccme "Y/X <bawqc> with the semantic relations of agent and patient remaining the In a contrastive sentence one may cmit the agent: same. "Y/bawqc, Z/maiv bawqc" ("Y lsomebody] hits, Z lthe same person! doesn't hit"). These facts are common to Thai, Mandarin and presumably all basically "SVO" languages in the As for object-placement in serial verb constructions area. this is a complex question that will not be discussed here. Indirect object placement will be discussed in the next section.

4.7.1 <u>Constructions of giving</u>. Here the DU precedes the IO, an order which is an areal feature: Sou

Reproduced with permission of the copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.

meih> `l give the book [to] you'. It is also an areal feature that the "verb of giving \Rightarrow NP" construction can also be used with a VP complement to the NP, making up a serial verb construction of the pivotal kind with the verb of giving taking on permissocaustive meaning.

4.8. <u>Verb- (or VP-) serialization</u>. This has been, or will be, dealt with under various headings, e.g., clauses as topics, clauses with resultative complements, strings of verbs (or VP's), barataxis, clausal or verbal complements, purpose clauses, clauses of reason, the pivotal construction, the pseudo-pivotal construction, auxiliaries + VP complements, and the reader is directed to refer to the relevant sections. There is one other kind of serial-verb construction that has not yet been dealt with and that has been called the <u>co-verbial construction</u>.

4.8.1 Second Merbs as directional complements. VP's can be followed by directional complements in the form of verbs; the glosses are the meanings they have as main verbs: <faux> `to ascend', <jiac> `to descend', <pinqc> `to enter' and <tshaatv> `to emerge', <dzwenx> `to return', <jhiax> `to cross over', and <goi> `be open, be apart, be away' to produce meanings like the German prefixes ter-, hin-, herauf-, herab-, etc. in a manner almost identical to Mandarin as illustrated in Chao 1968:458.

Chapter IV

4.8.2 <u>The verbs {Bingh} and {taaih} used as aspect</u> <u>tual/evaluative/diectics_complements</u>. These indicate a change of state, and by the choice ct {mingh} one can indicate that the change is not desirable, or neutral, while {taaih} marks it as desirable: e.g., (using contractions with the change-of-state particle {aq}) {thutv mic aq} 'He's (gone and) taken it off (when he shouldn't have)' versus {thutv taac aq} 'He's taken it off (as we hoped he would'.

4.8.3 <u>The co-verbial construction</u>. This resembles a "V + PP" expression in English, except

- (1) that the order of elements is reversed "FP + V",
- (2) the "preposition" can also be used in other constructions as a (main) verb, hence its name "cc-verb", and
- (3) the NP in the "PP" has to be 14 Humanl. In other words, they are used when human beings find themseives in some kind of locative case role, e.g.,

< yia {(a) thengx
(b) kan
(c) tshaux } meih thev teix dia >

"I ask you for a little medicine" ("I associate-with-you lin order to] ask-for some medicine; I ask for some medicine from you" -- sentences (a) and (b)], and "You and I ask for

some medicine' ("I be-with you ask for medicine" -- sentence (c)). It needs further checking to establish whether sentences (a) and (b) can also bear the meaning of sentence (c), the latter being unambiguous. Co-verbial expressions seem to be the preferred means of dealing with human <u>oblique</u> objects. My impression is that the coverbs are not as "deverbalized" as in Mandarin: for instance, they may take aspect markers freely. As for (human) incirect objects, these follow the main verb in the next construction to be discussed.

4.8.4 <u>The VP + <pun> + NP corstruction</u>. This has the meaning 'VP for NP', e.g.: <yia toqc sou pun meih> 'l read a book for you'. The constituent tollowing the <pun> may also be clausal <yia toqc sou pun <u>meih mwargz</u>> 'l read the book for you to listen to', or we can regard the NF after <pun> as pivotal here. The link with <pun> in this construction seems to keep it an indirect object, i.e., nct an oblique object, and it is the co-verbial treatment of oblique human objects that provides evidence (a) that L+ human] is a syntactic category in Mien, and (b) that oblique objects are distinguishable grammatically from indirect objects.

4.9. <u>Other_constituents_of_the_clause:_adverbial</u> expressions_of_time._manner_and_place.

4.9.1 lime. Expressions of point of time may stand as topic at the front of the sentence, e.g., Kaay teangh yia jaaux meih> \In a minute 1'll teach you', and <<u>loz-hooi</u> maaih tauh auv-kwaav-mienh> 'Long ago there was a widow'. Some, however, must occur between the subject and the verb, e.g., <ninh tshovthoc thaux> 'He just new arrived', and (yia tshabe faix nye> (L 183) 'I was still small', or cninh agloc faux kuh-ngwaaic mingh> "She always went up to the sky". It is interesting that the placement of such time expressions is the same in English, more or less, i.e., there seem to be two sets. Perhaps there is some analogy here to the inner and outer locative expressions of Chinese, with the sentence-initial set corresponding to the outer locative. Mien has no word for from?, and instead usually uses the locative verb (yiem> 'to be at; to be there; to dwell', e.g.: <yiem naiv jhiax mingh> (L 116) `frcm ncw on'. Extent of time is expressed by a Num + Clf expression placed after the verb, e.g., <ninh aengx tscix kcx yietc hnyaangx> (L 169) 'He has grown older by yet another year', or Kyia yiem naiv amelikaa tuqv pyaa bnyaangx> 'l have been in America tor five years' or (yia tscux korg <u>yiem ihugy nawm</u> tsyangh-hoc laws hietc nawm tsyangh-hoc) 'l worked from six to eight .

4.9.2 <u>Manner</u>. There are three ways of expressing manner in Mien:

(a) Une is to add a stative verb after the verb that is being modified in a resultative construction, e.g., (ninh lawh longx fuqc-jhwei> 'She rears the children well' ("She rear be-good children"). The placement of the object is tricky, in that the stative verb precedes it in the positive, as above; and follows it in the negative: (ninh tawn fuqc-jhwei mv longx> ("She rear children not be-good").

(b) The second way is for the manner expression modifying the verb to precede the verb and be connected to it by the particle (nyei), e.g.: (byungo phyaai phyaai nyei jiac) "The rain is coming down lightly" ("Rain sprinkle sprinkle nye descend") (L 43).

(c) The way a high degree of something is expressed is to place the word <haic> 'very' at the end of the VP: <aqcf tuqv kan mienh leiz haic> 'It is very cifficult to follow the customs of the Mien' ("Difficult follow Mien customs very").

4.9.3 <u>Place</u>. Location is expressed in several ways in Mien:

(a) By an oblique object user with a verb, e.g., <paix dyangx> (L 21) 'to lean (something) against a tree' ("lean tree"), <yia dzuanx uav pyauv> 'I'm goirg home' ("l return over-there house").

(b) By the use of the locative vert (yien>, e.g., (yia yien pyauv> 'I am at home', (aah-hnoi yia yien liv/chamaawn> 'Yesterday I was in Richmond'.

(c) By the use of a <yiem> phrase together with another VP, i.e., by VP serialization, e.g.: <yia tsoux kong yiem pyauv> 'I work at home' ("I do work be-at home"). Here the VP's seem to be reversible without a change of meaning: <yia yiem pyauv tsoux kong>.

The NP that follows (yiem) in (b) and (c) above may be used alone, or accompanied by a specific-location noun, or localizer, semantically corresponding to an English preposition, e.g., (kaih-nyuaz> `insice; within; inner', as in (ninh an nyaanh yiem kapv kaih-nyuaz> `he put money in a box' ("He put money be-at box inside"). Sometimes the localizer is tacked on to its noun, forming a compound with tone sandhi: (kaengh-daangc> `in front of the door', (pyauv-hlen> `beside the house'. When it is not so attached, the order of localizer and head noun may be reversed under conditions that require further investigation.1121

[12] For a study of locative constructions in Mien and Mandarin see Solnit (n.d.).

CHAPTER V

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The present work is very far from teing a comprehensive study of Mien grammar and our indebtecness to the pioneers will be obvious on every page. We intend that our contribution, which takes the form of a review of published data, presentation of new data, and analysis, firstly in the light of certain aspects of contemporary grammatical theory, and secondly in the light of typological comparison from the general linguistic area of which Mien forms a part, will by only the beginning of a more ample grammatical study that we intend to carry out as a continuing enterprise.

EIBLIDGEAPEY

- Hach, E. and Harms, R. T., <u>1970</u>. <u>Universals</u> in <u>linguistic</u> <u>theory</u>, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, London.
- Dach, E., <u>1970</u>. "Nouns and noun phrases," in Bach and Harms 1970, pp. 91-124.
- Ballard, W.L.. "The linguistic history of South China: Miao-Yao and Southern dialects," MS.
- Benedict, P. K., <u>1985</u>. "Early Sinc-Tibetan/Miao-Yao loan relationships," handout at 1985 SEASSI Conference, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, August 2, 1985.
- Deng, Tan Chee, 1975. "The Yao people: an introduction," "The Yao village of Khun Haeng: some impressions," "A Yao bridge ceremony," "The Yao naming system," "A legendary history of the origin of the Yao people," in <u>Earmers in the Hills, Upland Peoples of North Thailans</u>, ed. A. K. Walker, Data Papers in Social Anthropology, School of Comparative Social Science, University Sains Malaysia, Pinang.
- Chafe, W., <u>1979</u>. "Givenness, contrastiveness, definiteness, subjects, topics and points of view," in Li 1976, pp. 25-56.
- Chang, K., <u>1947</u>. "On the Miao-Yao Tenes," <u>BIHP</u>, vol. 10, pp. 93-110, (in Chinese).
- Chang, K., <u>1953</u>. "On the Tone System of the Miao and Yac Languages," <u>Language</u>, vcl. 29, pp. 374-378.
- Chang, K., 1966. "A Comparative Study of the Yao Tone System," Language, vol. 42, pp. 303-310.
- Chang, K., <u>1972</u>. "The Reconstruction of the Proto-Miao-Yao Tones," <u>BIHF</u>, vol. 44, pp. 541-628.

Chang, K., <u>1976</u>. "Proto-Miac Initials," <u>BIHP</u>, vol. 47, no. 2, pp. 155-218.

- Chao, Y. R., <u>1932</u>. "A preliminary study of English intonations (with American variants) and its Chinese equivalents," in <u>Is'ai Yuan B'ei Anniversary Volume</u>, Supplement I of BIHP, pp. 105-156.
- Chao, Y. R., <u>1968</u>. <u>A Grammar of Spoken Chinese</u>. University of California Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, California.
- Chomsky, N., 1957. Syntactic Structures: Mouton & Company, The Hague.
- Chemsky, N., <u>1965</u>. "Topics in the theory of generative grammar," in <u>Current Irends in Linguistics</u>, <u>Vol. III. Linguistic</u> <u>Iheory</u>, ed. T. A. Sebeck, Mouton & Company, The Hague.
- Chop, K., <u>1973</u>. "Le systeme de la famille Yao," <u>Bulletin of the</u> <u>Siam Society</u>, Bangkok.
- Clark, M., <u>1979</u>. "Synchronically derived prepositions in diachronic perspective: some evicence from Hmong," paper presented at the 12th International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics.
- Clark, M., <u>1980</u>. "Source phrases in White Hmong," in <u>Working Par</u> pers in <u>Linguistics</u>, pp. 1-50, University of Hawaii.
- Clark, M., <u>1985</u>. "Asking questions in Hmong and other Southeast Asian Languages," <u>Linguistics of the libeto-Burman Area</u>, vol. 5, no. 2, pp. 60-67.
- Comrie, 3., <u>1981</u>. Language Universals and Linguistic Typology: Syntax and Morphology, The University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Cushing, Rev. J. N., M.A., E.D., <u>1887</u>. <u>Grammar of the Shan</u> <u>Language</u>, American Baptist Mission Press, F. D. Phinney, Supt., Rangoon.
- Cushing, Rev. J. N., M.A., E.D., <u>1888</u>. <u>Elementary Handbook of</u> <u>the Shan Language</u>, American Baptist Mission Press, F. D. Phinney, Supt., Rangoon.

Cushing, Rev. J. N., M.A., Ph.D, D.D., <u>1914</u>. <u>A Shan and English</u> <u>Dictionary</u>, American Baptist Mission Press, F. D. Phinney, Supt., Rangcon.

- Cushman, R. D., <u>1970</u>. "Rebel haunts and lotus huts: problems in the ethnohistory of the Yac," (Cornell University, Ph.D 1970 Anthropology) Ann Arbor, Mich., University Microfilms.
- Dixon, R. M. W., <u>1979</u>. "Ergativity," <u>Language</u>, vol. 55, pp. 59-138.
- Fasold, R. W. A., <u>1969</u>. "Ncun compounding in Thai," MS (an abridged version of unpublished doctoral dissertation, U. of Chicago, 1968); referred to in Warutamasintop, 1975.
- Fillmore, C. J., <u>1970</u>. "The case for case," in Bach and Harms 1970, pp. 1-90.
- Foley, W. A. and Valin, R. D. Van Jr., <u>1977</u>. "On the viability of the notion of 'subject' in universal grammer," <u>BLS</u>, vol. 3, pp. 293-320.
- Foley, W. A. and Valin, R. D. Van Jr., <u>1984</u>. <u>Functional Syntax</u> <u>and Universal Grammar</u>, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Forrest, R. A. D., <u>1965</u>. <u>The Chinese language [2nd Edn., revised</u> and <u>expanded</u>.], Faber and Faber Ltd., London.
- Fuller, J. W., <u>1985</u>. "Subject and topic in Hmong: the case for topic particles," Paper read at SEASSI Conference, Hmong Linguistics Panel, August 2, 1985.
- Givon, T., <u>1976</u>. "Topic, pronoun and grammatical agreement," in Li, ed..
- Goral, D. R., <u>1978</u>. "Numerical classifier systems: a southeast Asian cross-linguistic analysis," <u>Linguistics of the</u> <u>Tibeto-Burman Area</u>, vol. 4, nc. 1, pp. 1-72.

- Halliday, N. A. K., <u>1970</u>. "Language structure and language function," in <u>New Horizons in Linguistics</u>, ed. Lyons, Penguin books, Ltd., 1970, Harmendsworth, Middlesex.
- Halliday, M. A. K. and Hasan, R., <u>1976</u>. <u>Cohesion in English</u>, Longmans, London.
- Haudricourt, A. G., <u>1954</u>. "Introduction a la phonologie historique des langues Miac-Yao," <u>Bulletin de l'Ecole Française</u> <u>d'Extreme Drient</u>, vol. 44, no. 2, pp. 555-576.
- Heudricourt, A. G., <u>1961</u>. "Eipartition et tripartition des systemes de tons dans quelques langues d'Extreme-Orient," <u>Bulletin de la Societe de Linguistique de Paris</u>, vol. 56, pp. 163-180.
- Heath, J., <u>1975</u>. "Some functional relationships in grammar," Language, vol. 51, pp. 89-104.
- Hc, R. and Chapman, E. C. eds., <u>1973</u>. <u>Studies of Contemporary</u> <u>Ihailand</u>, ANU, Canberra.
- Huffman, F. E., <u>1970</u>. "Thai and Cambodian a case of syntactic borrowing?," <u>Journal of the American Oriental Society</u>, vol. 93, no. 4, pp. 488-509, cited in Clark 1985 on questions and Sohart n.d. on proof of syntactic borrowing .
- Jackendoff, R., <u>1974</u>. "Morphological and semantic regularities in the lexicon," <u>Language</u>.
- Jaisser, A. C., <u>1985</u>. "Delivering an introduction to psychocollocations with SIAB in White Hmong," handout, first draft at SASSIC, U. of Michigan, Ann Arbor, August 2, 1985.
- Kandre, P. K., 1967. "Autonemy and integration of social systems: the Tu Mien ('Yao' or 'Man') mountain population and their neighbors," in <u>Southeast Asian Tribes</u>, <u>Minorities</u>, and <u>Nations</u>, ed. Kunstadter.

Karlyren, p., <u>1974</u>. <u>Analytic dictionary of Chinese and Sino-Japanese</u>, Dover Publications, Inc., New York, Ian unabridged, unaltered republication of the work originally published by the Librairie Urientaliste Paul Geuthner, Paris, in 1923].

- Keenan, E. and Comrie, B., <u>1972</u>. "Noun phrase accessibility and universal grammar," paper presented at the 47th LSA meeting.
- Keenan, E., <u>1976</u>. "Towards a universal cefinition of 'subject'," in C. Li, 1976, pp. 301-333.
- Keenan, E. and Comrie, B., <u>1977</u>. "Noun phrase accessibility and universal grammar," <u>Linguistic Inquiry</u>, vol. 8, pp. 63-99.
- Kuno, S. and Wongkhomthong, P., <u>1581</u>. "Relative clauses in Thai," <u>Studies in Language</u>, vcl. 5, no. 2, pp. 195-226.
- Kunstadter, P. ed., <u>1967</u>. <u>Scutheast Asian Iribes</u>, <u>Minorities</u>, <u>and Nations</u>, Princeton University Press, Princeton.
- Lakoff, R. T., <u>1968</u>. <u>Abstract Syntax and Latin Complementation</u>. M.I.T. Press, Cambridge, Mass..
- Lees, R. B., <u>1960</u>. "The grammar of English nominalizations," Inciana University Research Center in Anthropology, Folklore, and Linguistics, Publication 12 (identical with <u>Internation</u>al Journal of American Linguistics, XXVI, No. 3, Part II).
- Lemoine, J., <u>1978</u>. "Les Miac-Yao," in <u>Les peuples non Han de la Chine</u>, Ethnologie Regionale II, Encyclopedie de la Pleiade, Paris.
- Lemoine, J., <u>1982.</u> Yao <u>Ceremonial Paintings</u>: White Lotus Co., Ltd., Bangkok.
- Lemoine, J., <u>1982</u>. "Yao religion and society," in <u>Highlanders of</u> <u>Thailand</u>, ed. J. McKinncn and W. Bhrukvashi.

Lemoine, J., <u>1983</u>. "Why has death stalked the refugees?," <u>Natur</u> al <u>History</u>, vol. 92, no. 11, pp. 6-19.

Li, C. ed., 1976. Subject and logic, Academic Press, New York.

- Li, C. and Thompson, S., <u>1976</u>. "Subject and topic: a new topology of language," in C. Li, 1976.
- Liles, E. R., <u>1972</u>. <u>Linguistics and the English Language</u>, Goooyear Publishing, Inc., Pacific Palisades, California.
- Lombard, S. J., <u>1968</u>. "Names," appendix C in Lombard 1968, pp. 329-333.
- Lombard, S. J., <u>1963</u>. "Proverbs and idicms," appendix D in Lompard 1968, pp. 335-339.
- Lombard, S. J., <u>1968</u>. <u>Yao-English Dictionary</u>, Data Paper No. 69, Southeast Asia Program, Department of Asian Studies, Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, H. C. Purnell, Jr., editor.
- Mao, Zongwu and Zhou, Zuyao, <u>1962</u>. "Yaozu yuyan gaikuang L"Sketch of the languages of the Yao people"]," in <u>Zhongguo</u> Yuwen, vol. 114, pp. <u>141-147</u>.
- Mac, Zongwu, Meng, Chaoji, and Zheng, Zongze, <u>1982</u>. <u>Yaozu</u> <u>Yuyan</u> <u>Jianzhi</u> ["Brief <u>Account</u> of the Languages of the Yao <u>Peo-</u> <u>ple</u>"], Minzu Chubanshe, Beijing.
- Marchand, H., <u>1966</u>. "The categories and types of present-day Enclish word formation."
- Marr, D., <u>1985</u>. <u>Central Vietnam rebuilds</u>: <u>an eyewitness account</u>: Indochina Issues 59 (July 1985), Center for International Policy , Washington, D. C..
- Matisoff, J. A., <u>1973</u>. <u>The Grammar of Lanu</u>, University of Calfornia Press, Berkeley.
- Matisoff, J. A., <u>1974</u>. "Verb concatenation in Kachin," <u>Linguis</u>tics of the <u>libeto-Eurgan Area</u>, vol. 1, no. 1, pp. 186-207.

- Matisoff, J. A., <u>1978</u>. "Variational semantics in Tibeto-Burman, the "organic" approach to linguistic comparison," Occasional Papers of the Wolfenden Society, VI, F. K. Lehnan, ed., [duplicated 1974, 1975].
- Matisoff, J. A., <u>1985</u>. "Hearts and minds: psycho-collocations in Southest Asian languages and English," paper to be presented to the 18th International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics, Bargkok, August 27-29, 1985.
- HcCawley, J. D., <u>1970</u>. "The Role of Semantics in a Grammar," in bach and Harms 1970, 125-170...
- McKinnon, J. and Bhrukrasri, W. eds., <u>1982</u>. <u>Highlanders of Ibai</u>land, Oxford University Press, Kualalampur.
- Miles, D., <u>1973</u>. "Some demographic implications of regional commerce: the case of North Thailand's Yao Minority," in <u>Stucies of Contemprary Thailand</u>, ed. R. Ho and E. C. Chapman, ANU, Canberra.
- Byhill, J., <u>1983</u>. "A comparative study of topic and focus constructions with special reference to Tzotzil," <u>BLS</u>, vol. 9, pp. 155-169.
- Newmeyer, F. J., <u>1975</u>. "The position of incorporation transformations in a grammar," <u>BLS</u>, vci. 1, pp. 333-342.
- Nichols, J., 1975. "Verbal semantics and sentence construction."
- Nconan, M., <u>1977</u>. "En subjects and Topics," <u>BLS</u>, vol. 3, 372-385.
- Ness, R. B., <u>1964</u>. <u>Thai reference grammar</u>. Foreign Service Institute, Washington.
- Panupong, V., <u>1970</u>. <u>Inter-sentence relations in modern conversa-</u> <u>tional Ihai</u>, The Siam Scciety, Bangkok.

Purnell, H., 1970. "Towards a reconstruction of proto-Miao-Yao."

Purnell, H. C., Jr., <u>1960</u>. "Kinship terπinology," Appendix Β in Lombard 1968, pp. 321-322.

Purnell, H. C., Jr., <u>1960</u>. "Numbers," Appendix A in Lombard 1968, pp. 317-320.

Schachter, P., <u>1973</u>. "The subject in Philippine languages: topic, actor, actor-topic, or mone of the above," in Li 1976, pp. 491-518.

- Searle, J. R., <u>1970</u>. <u>Speech acts: an essay in the philosophy of</u> <u>language</u>, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Snalley, W. B., 1961. "Outline of Khmu? Structure," American Uriental Series, Essay 2.
- Scinit, D., <u>1984</u>. "Introduction to the Biac Min Yao Language," paper presented at the 17th International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics, Sept. 7-9, 1984, University of Dregon, Eugene.
- Thompson, S. A., <u>1973</u>. "Resultative verb compounds in Mandarin: a case for lexical rules," <u>Larguage</u>, vol. 49, pp. 361-379.
- Walker, A. R. ed., 1975. Earmers in the Hills, Upland Peoples of North Inailand, Data Fapers in Social Anthropology, School of Comparative Social Science, University Sains Malaysia, Pinang.
- Warotamasikkhadit, U., <u>1972</u>. <u>Thai syntax</u>: <u>an</u> <u>outline</u>, Mouton, The Hague, referred to in Warutamasintop, 1975.
- Warutamasintop, W., <u>1975</u>. "N + V compound nouns in Thai," in <u>BLS</u>, vol. 1, pp. 445-455.
- Wheaten, J. W., <u>1985</u>. "Subject and topic in Hmong: the case for topic particles," paper read at SEASSI Conference, Hmong linguistics Panel, August 2, 1985.

Zimmer, K., 1975. Some ceneral observations about nominal compounds, Stanford University Working Papers in Language Universals, No. 5, referred to in Newmeyer, 1975 (...incorporation..).

.

ŧ

.

-